

The attached DRAFT document (provided here for historical purposes) has been superseded by the following publication:

Publication Number:     **NIST Special Publication (SP) 800-57 Part 1 Revision 4**

Title:                     **Recommendation for Key Management, Part 1: General**

Publication Date:        **1/28/2016**

- Final Publication: <http://dx.doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.800-57pt1r4> (which links to <http://nvlpubs.nist.gov/nistpubs/SpecialPublications/NIST.SP.800-57pt1r4.pdf>).
- Related Information on CSRC:  
<http://csrc.nist.gov/publications/PubsSPs.html#SP-800-57-Part%201-Rev.%204> and  
[http://csrc.nist.gov/groups/ST/toolkit/key\\_management.html](http://csrc.nist.gov/groups/ST/toolkit/key_management.html)
- Information on other NIST cybersecurity publications and programs can be found at: <http://csrc.nist.gov/>

The following information was posted with the attached DRAFT document:

Sep. 10, 2015

**SP 800-57 Part 1-Rev. 4**

**DRAFT Recommendation for Key Management: Part 1: General (Revision 4)**

NIST requests comments on a revision of Special Publication (SP) 800-57, Part 1, *Recommendation for Key Management, Part 1 (Rev. 4)*. This Recommendation provides general guidance and best practices for the management of cryptographic keying material. A list of changes is provided in Appendix D of the document. Please send comments to [keymanagement@nist.gov](mailto:keymanagement@nist.gov) by **October 31, 2015**, with "Comments on SP 800-57, Part 1" in the subject line.

**DRAFT NIST Special Publication 800-57, Part 1,  
Rev. 4**

---

**Recommendation for Key  
Management – Part 1: General  
(Revision 4)**

---

**Elaine Barker**

<http://dx.doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.XXX>

---

**C O M P U T E R   S E C U R I T Y**

---

**NIST**  
**National Institute of  
Standards and Technology**  
U.S. Department of Commerce

**DRAFT NIST Special Publication 800-57, Part 1,  
Rev. 4**

# **Recommendation for Key Management – Part 1: General (Revision 4)**

**Elaine Barker**  
Computer Security Division  
Information Technology Laboratory

<http://dx.doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.XXX>

September 2015



U.S. Department of Commerce  
*Penny Pritzker, Secretary*

National Institute of Standards and Technology  
*Willie E. May, Under Secretary of Commerce for Standards and Technology and Director*

## Authority

This publication has been developed by NIST to further its statutory responsibilities under the Federal Information Security Management Act (FISMA), Public Law (P.L.) 107-347. NIST is responsible for developing information security standards and guidelines, including minimum requirements for Federal information systems, but such standards and guidelines shall not apply to national security systems without the express approval of appropriate Federal officials exercising policy authority over such systems. This guideline is consistent with the requirements of the Office of Management and Budget (OMB) Circular A-130, Section 8b(3), *Securing Agency Information Systems*, as analyzed in Circular A-130, Appendix IV: *Analysis of Key Sections*. Supplemental information is provided in Circular A-130, Appendix III, *Security of Federal Automated Information Resources*.

Nothing in this publication should be taken to contradict the standards and guidelines made mandatory and binding on Federal agencies by the Secretary of Commerce under statutory authority. Nor should these guidelines be interpreted as altering or superseding the existing authorities of the Secretary of Commerce, Director of the OMB, or any other Federal official. This publication may be used by nongovernmental organizations on a voluntary basis and is not subject to copyright in the United States. Attribution would, however, be appreciated by NIST.

National Institute of Standards and Technology Special Publication 800-90A  
Natl. Inst. Stand. Technol. Spec. Publ. 800-57, art 1, 168 pages (September 2015)  
<http://dx.doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.XXX>  
CODEN: NSPUE2

Certain commercial entities, equipment, or materials may be identified in this document in order to describe an experimental procedure or concept adequately. Such identification is not intended to imply recommendation or endorsement by NIST, nor is it intended to imply that the entities, materials, or equipment are necessarily the best available for the purpose.

There may be references in this publication to other publications currently under development by NIST in accordance with its assigned statutory responsibilities. The information in this publication, including concepts and methodologies, may be used by Federal agencies even before the completion of such companion publications. Thus, until each publication is completed, current requirements, guidelines, and procedures, where they exist, remain operative. For planning and transition purposes, Federal agencies may wish to closely follow the development of these new publications by NIST.

Organizations are encouraged to review all draft publications during public comment periods and provide feedback to NIST. All NIST Computer Security Division publications, other than the ones noted above, are available at <http://csrc.nist.gov/publications>.

### **Public comment period: September 11, 2015 to October 31, 2015**

All comments are subject to release under the Freedom of Information Act (FOIA)

National Institute of Standards and Technology  
Attn: Computer Security Division, Information Technology Laboratory  
100 Bureau Drive (Mail Stop 8930) Gaithersburg, MD 20899-8930  
Email: [keymanagement@nist.gov](mailto:keymanagement@nist.gov)

## **Reports on Computer Systems Technology**

The Information Technology Laboratory (ITL) at the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) promotes the U.S. economy and public welfare by providing technical leadership for the Nation's measurement and standards infrastructure. ITL develops tests, test methods, reference data, proof of concept implementations, and technical analyses to advance the development and productive use of information technology. ITL's responsibilities include the development of management, administrative, technical, and physical standards and guidelines for the cost-effective security and privacy of other than national security-related information in Federal information systems. The Special Publication 800-series reports on ITL's research, guidelines, and outreach efforts in information system security, and its collaborative activities with industry, government, and academic organizations.

### **Abstract**

This Recommendation provides cryptographic key management guidance. It consists of three parts. Part 1 provides general guidance and best practices for the management of cryptographic keying material. Part 2 provides guidance on policy and security planning requirements for U.S. government agencies. Finally, Part 3 provides guidance when using the cryptographic features of current systems.

### **Keywords**

archive; assurances; authentication; authorization; availability; backup; compromise; confidentiality; cryptanalysis; cryptographic key; cryptographic module; digital signature; hash function; key agreement; key management; key management policy; key recovery; key transport; originator-usage period; private key; public key; recipient-usage period; secret key; split knowledge; trust anchor.

### **Acknowledgements**

The National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) gratefully acknowledges and appreciates contributions by previous authors of this document on the many security issues associated with this Recommendation: William Barker, William Burr, and Timothy Polk from NIST; Miles Smid from Orion Security; and Lydia Ziegler from the National Security Agency. NIST also thanks the many contributions by the public and private sectors whose thoughtful and constructive comments improved the quality and usefulness of this publication.

## Overview

The proper management of cryptographic keys is essential to the effective use of cryptography for security. Keys are analogous to the combination of a safe. If a safe combination is known to an adversary, the strongest safe provides no security against penetration. Similarly, poor key management may easily compromise strong algorithms. Ultimately, the security of information protected by cryptography directly depends on the strength of the keys, the effectiveness of mechanisms and protocols associated with the keys, and the protection afforded to the keys. All keys need to be protected against modification, and secret and private keys need to be protected against unauthorized disclosure. Key management provides the foundation for the secure generation, storage, distribution, use and destruction of keys.

Users and developers are presented with many choices in their use of cryptographic mechanisms. Inappropriate choices may result in an illusion of security, but little or no real security for the protocol or application. This Recommendation (i.e., SP 800-57) provides background information and establishes frameworks to support appropriate decisions when selecting and using cryptographic mechanisms.

This Recommendation does not address the implementation details for cryptographic modules that may be used to achieve the security requirements identified. These details are addressed in Federal Information Processing Standard (FIPS) 140 [\[FIPS 140\]](#), the associated implementation guidance and the derived test requirements (available at <http://csrc.nist.gov/groups/STM/cmvp/standards.html>).

This Recommendation is written for several different audiences and is divided into three parts.

Part 1, *General*, contains basic key management guidance. It is intended to advise developers and system administrators on the "best practices" associated with key management. Cryptographic module developers may benefit from this general guidance by obtaining a greater understanding of the key management features that are required to support specific, intended ranges of applications. Protocol developers may identify key management characteristics associated with specific suites of algorithms and gain a greater understanding of the security services provided by those algorithms. System administrators may use this document to determine which configuration settings are most appropriate for their information. Part 1 of the Recommendation:

1. Defines the security services that may be provided and key types that may be employed in using cryptographic mechanisms.
2. Provides background information regarding the cryptographic algorithms that use cryptographic keying material.
3. Classifies the different types of keys and other cryptographic information according to their functions, specifies the protection that each type of information requires and identifies methods for providing this protection.
4. Identifies the states in which a cryptographic key may exist during its lifetime.
5. Identifies the multitude of functions involved in key management.

6. Discusses a variety of key management issues related to the keying material. Topics discussed include key usage, cryptoperiod length, domain-parameter validation, public-key validation, accountability, audit, key management system survivability, and guidance for cryptographic algorithm and key size selection.

Part 2, *General Organization and Management Requirements*, is intended primarily to address the needs of system owners and managers. It provides a framework and general guidance to support establishing cryptographic key management within an organization and a basis for satisfying the key management aspects of statutory and policy security planning requirements for Federal government organizations.

Part 3, *Implementation-Specific Key Management Guidance*, is intended to address the key management issues associated with currently available implementations.

## Table of Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>INTRODUCTION</b>	<b>13</b>
1.1	Goal/Purpose	13
1.2	Audience	13
1.3	Scope	14
1.4	Purpose of FIPS and NIST Recommendations (NIST Standards)	15
1.5	Content and Organization	16
<b>2</b>	<b>GLOSSARY OF TERMS AND ACRONYMS</b>	<b>17</b>
2.1	Glossary	17
2.2	Acronyms	27
<b>3</b>	<b>SECURITY SERVICES</b>	<b>28</b>
3.1	Confidentiality	28
3.2	Data Integrity	29
3.3	Authentication	29
3.4	Authorization	29
3.5	Non-repudiation	30
3.6	Support Services	30
3.7	Combining Services	30
<b>4</b>	<b>CRYPTOGRAPHIC ALGORITHMS</b>	<b>32</b>
4.1	Classes of Cryptographic Algorithms	33
4.2	Cryptographic Algorithm Functionality	34
4.2.1	Hash Functions	34
4.2.2	Symmetric-Key Algorithms used for Encryption and Decryption	34
4.2.2.1	Advanced Encryption Standard (AES)	34
4.2.2.2	Triple DEA (TDEA)	34
4.2.2.3	Modes of Operation	35
4.2.3	Message Authentication Codes (MACs)	35
4.2.3.1	MACs Using Block Cipher Algorithms	35
4.2.3.2	MACs Using Hash Functions	36
4.2.4	Digital Signature Algorithms	36
4.2.5	Key Establishment Schemes	36
4.2.5.1	Discrete Log Key Agreement Schemes	37

4.2.5.2	Key Establishment Using Integer-Factorization Schemes.....	37
4.2.5.3	Security Properties of the Key-Establishment Schemes.....	37
4.2.5.4	Key Encryption and Key Wrapping.....	38
4.2.5.5	Key Confirmation .....	38
4.2.6	Key Establishment Protocols .....	38
4.2.7	Random Bit Generation .....	39
<b>5</b>	<b>GENERAL KEY MANAGEMENT GUIDANCE.....</b>	<b>39</b>
5.1	Key Types and Other Information .....	39
5.1.1	Cryptographic Keys .....	39
5.1.2	Other Cryptographic or Related Information.....	42
5.2	Key Usage.....	43
5.3	Cryptoperiods.....	43
5.3.1	Risk Factors Affecting Cryptoperiods .....	44
5.3.2	Consequence Factors Affecting Cryptoperiods .....	45
5.3.3	Other Factors Affecting Cryptoperiods .....	45
5.3.3.1	Communications versus Storage.....	45
5.3.3.2	Cost of Key Revocation and Replacement .....	45
5.3.4	Cryptoperiods for Asymmetric Keys .....	45
5.3.5	Symmetric Key Usage Periods and Cryptoperiods.....	46
5.3.6	Cryptoperiod Recommendations for Specific Key Types .....	48
5.3.7	Recommendations for Other Keying Material.....	56
5.4	Assurances .....	56
5.4.1	Assurance of Integrity (Integrity Protection).....	57
5.4.2	Assurance of Domain Parameter Validity .....	57
5.4.3	Assurance of Public-Key Validity .....	57
5.4.4	Assurance of Private-Key Possession.....	57
5.5	Compromise of Keys and other Keying Material .....	58
5.6	Guidance for Cryptographic Algorithm and Key-Size Selection .....	61
5.6.1	Comparable Algorithm Strengths .....	61
5.6.2	Defining Appropriate Algorithm Suites.....	65
5.6.3	Using Algorithm Suites.....	66
5.6.4	Transitioning to New Algorithms and Key Sizes .....	67
5.6.5	Security Strength Reduction .....	70

<b>6</b>	<b>PROTECTION REQUIREMENTS FOR CRYPTOGRAPHIC INFORMATION .....</b>	<b>72</b>
6.1	Protection and Assurance Requirements .....	72
6.1.1	Summary of Protection and Assurance Requirements for Cryptographic Keys.....	73
6.1.2	Summary of Protection Requirements for Other Cryptographic or Related Information .....	76
6.2	Protection Mechanisms .....	78
6.2.1	Protection Mechanisms for Cryptographic Information in Transit.....	79
6.2.1.1	Availability .....	79
6.2.1.2	Integrity.....	79
6.2.1.3	Confidentiality .....	80
6.2.1.4	Association with Usage or Application .....	81
6.2.1.5	Association with Other Entities .....	81
6.2.1.6	Association with Other Related Information .....	81
6.2.2	Protection Mechanisms for Information in Storage.....	81
6.2.2.1	Availability .....	81
6.2.2.2	Integrity.....	82
6.2.2.3	Confidentiality .....	82
6.2.2.4	Association with Usage or Application .....	83
6.2.2.5	Association with the Other Entities .....	83
6.2.2.6	Association with Other Related Information .....	83
6.2.3	Metadata Associated with Cryptographic Information.....	83
6.2.3.1	Metadata for Keys.....	83
6.2.3.2	Metadata for Related Cryptographic Information.....	84
<b>7</b>	<b>KEY STATES AND TRANSITIONS.....</b>	<b>85</b>
7.1	Pre-activation State .....	86
7.2	Active State .....	86
7.3	Suspended State .....	88
7.4	Deactivated State .....	90
7.5	Compromised State.....	91
7.6	Destroyed State .....	92
<b>8</b>	<b>KEY-MANAGEMENT PHASES AND FUNCTIONS.....</b>	<b>92</b>
8.1	Pre-operational Phase.....	94
8.1.1	User Registration Function .....	94

8.1.2	System Initialization Function .....	94
8.1.3	User Initialization Function .....	95
8.1.4	Keying-Material Installation Function.....	95
8.1.5	Key Establishment Function .....	95
8.1.5.1	Generation and Distribution of Asymmetric Key Pairs .....	96
8.1.5.1.1	Distribution of Static Public Keys .....	96
8.1.5.1.1.1	Distribution of a Trust Anchor's Public Key in a PKI .....	96
8.1.5.1.1.2	Submission to a Registration Authority or Certification Authority .....	98
8.1.5.1.1.3	General Distribution .....	100
8.1.5.1.2	Distribution of Ephemeral Public Keys .....	100
8.1.5.1.3	Distribution of Centrally Generated Key Pairs .....	100
8.1.5.2	Generation and Distribution of Symmetric Keys.....	101
8.1.5.2.1	Key Generation .....	101
8.1.5.2.2	Key Distribution .....	102
8.1.5.2.2.1	Manual Key Distribution .....	102
8.1.5.2.2.2	Automated Key Distribution/Key Transport/Key Wrapping...	103
8.1.5.2.3	Key Agreement .....	103
8.1.5.3	Generation and Distribution of Other Keying Material .....	104
8.1.5.3.1	Domain Parameters .....	104
8.1.5.3.2	Initialization Vectors.....	104
8.1.5.3.3	Shared Secrets.....	105
8.1.5.3.4	RBG Seeds.....	105
8.1.5.3.5	Other Public and Secret Information .....	105
8.1.5.3.6	Intermediate Results.....	105
8.1.5.3.7	Random Bits/Numbers.....	105
8.1.5.3.8	Passwords.....	105
8.1.6	Key Registration Function .....	106
8.2	Operational Phase .....	106
8.2.1	Normal Operational Storage Function .....	107
8.2.1.1	Cryptographic Module Storage.....	107
8.2.1.2	Immediately Accessible Storage Media.....	107
8.2.2	Continuity of Operations Function .....	107
8.2.2.1	Backup Storage .....	107

8.2.2.2	Key Recovery Function .....	109
8.2.3	Key Change Function .....	110
8.2.3.1	Re-keying.....	110
8.2.3.2	Key Update Function .....	110
8.2.4	Key Derivation Methods.....	110
8.3	Post-Operational Phase .....	111
8.3.1	Archive Storage and Key Recovery Functions.....	112
8.3.2	Entity De-registration Function .....	115
8.3.3	Key De-registration Function .....	115
8.3.4	Key Destruction Function .....	116
8.3.5	Key Revocation Function .....	116
8.4	Destroyed Phase.....	117
<b>9</b>	<b>ACCOUNTABILITY, AUDIT, AND SURVIVABILITY .....</b>	<b>117</b>
9.1	Accountability.....	118
9.2	Audit .....	118
9.3	Key Management System Survivability .....	119
9.3.1	Backup Keys .....	119
9.3.2	Key Recovery.....	119
9.3.3	System Redundancy/Contingency Planning.....	120
9.3.3.1	General Principles.....	120
9.3.3.2	Cryptography and Key Management-specific Recovery Issues .....	121
9.3.4	Compromise Recovery.....	121
<b>10</b>	<b>KEY MANAGEMENT SPECIFICATIONS FOR CRYPTOGRAPHIC DEVICES OR APPLICATIONS.....</b>	<b>122</b>
10.1	Key Management Specification Description/Purpose .....	123
10.2	Content of the Key Management Specification .....	123
10.2.1	Cryptographic Application.....	124
10.2.2	Communications Environment .....	124
10.2.3	Key Management Component Requirements .....	124
10.2.4	Key Management Component Generation.....	124
10.2.5	Key Management Component Distribution.....	125
10.2.6	Keying Material Storage .....	125
10.2.7	Access Control .....	125

10.2.8 Accounting.....	125
10.2.9 Compromise Management and Recovery.....	125
10.2.10 Key Recovery.....	126
<b>APPENDIX A: CRYPTOGRAPHIC AND NON-CRYPTOGRAPHIC INTEGRITY AND SOURCE AUTHENTICATION MECHANISMS.....</b>	<b>127</b>
<b>APPENDIX B: KEY RECOVERY .....</b>	<b>130</b>
B.1 Recovery from Stored Keying Material.....	131
B.2 Recovery by Reconstruction of Keying Material.....	131
B.3 Conditions Under Which Keying Material Needs to be Recoverable.....	131
B.3.1 Signature Key Pairs.....	132
B.3.1.1 Private Signature Keys.....	132
B.3.1.2 Public Signature-verification Keys.....	132
B.3.2 Symmetric Authentication Keys.....	132
B.3.3 Authentication Key Pairs.....	133
B.3.3.1 Public Authentication Keys.....	133
B.3.3.2 Private Authentication Keys.....	134
B.3.4 Symmetric Data-Encryption Keys.....	134
B.3.5 Symmetric Key-Wrapping Keys.....	134
B.3.6 Random Number Generation Keys.....	135
B.3.7 Symmetric Master Keys.....	135
B.3.8 Key-Transport Key Pairs.....	135
B.3.8.1 Private Key-Transport Keys.....	135
B.3.8.2 Public Key Transport Keys.....	136
B.3.9 Symmetric Key Agreement Keys.....	136
B.3.10 Static Key-Agreement Key Pairs.....	136
B.3.10.1 Private Static Key-Agreement Keys.....	136
B.3.10.2 Public Static Key Agreement Keys.....	136
B.3.11 Ephemeral Key Pairs.....	137
B.3.11.1 Private Ephemeral Keys.....	137
B.3.11.2 Public Ephemeral Keys.....	137
B.3.12 Symmetric Authorization Keys.....	137
B.3.13 Authorization Key Pairs.....	137
B.3.13.1 Private Authorization Keys.....	138

B.3.13.2 Public Authorization Keys .....	138
B.3.14 Other Cryptographically Related Material.....	138
B.3.14.1 Domain Parameters .....	138
B.3.14.2 Initialization Vectors (IVs) .....	138
B.3.14.3 Shared Secrets .....	138
B.3.14.4 RBG Seeds .....	139
B.3.14.5 Other Public and Secret Information .....	139
B.3.14.6 Intermediate Results.....	139
B.3.14.7 Key Control Information.....	139
B.3.14.8 Random Numbers .....	139
B.3.14.9 Passwords.....	139
B.3.14.10 Audit Information.....	139
B.4 Key Recovery Systems.....	139
B.5 Key Recovery Policy.....	141
<b>APPENDIX C: REFERENCES.....</b>	<b>143</b>
<b>APPENDIX D: REVISIONS.....</b>	<b>147</b>

**Tables**

Table 1: Suggested cryptoperiods for key types .....	54
Table 2: Comparable strengths .....	62
Table 3: Hash function that can be used to provide the targeted security strengths	63
Table 4: Security strength time frames .....	65
Table 5: Protection requirements for cryptographic keys.....	73
Table 6: Protection requirements for other cryptographic or related material.....	76
Table 7: Backup of keys .....	106
Table 8: Backup of other cryptographic or related information .....	107
Table 9: Archive of keys.....	112
Table 10: Archive of other cryptographic related information .....	113

**Figures**

Figure 1: Symmetric key cryptoperiod (Example C).....	47
---	----

Figure 2: Algorithm Originator Usage Period Example ..... 68

Figure 3: Key states and transitions ..... 84

Figure 4: Key management phases ..... 91

Figure 5: Key management states and phases..... 92

# RECOMMENDATION FOR KEY MANAGEMENT

## Part 1: General

### 1 Introduction

Cryptographic mechanisms are one of the strongest ways to provide security services for electronic applications and protocols and for data storage. The National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) publishes Federal Information Processing Standards (FIPS) and NIST Recommendations (which are published as Special Publications) that specify cryptographic techniques for protecting sensitive, unclassified information.

Since NIST published the Data Encryption Standard (DES) in 1977, the suite of **approved** standardized algorithms has been growing. New classes of algorithms have been added, such as secure hash functions and asymmetric key algorithms for digital signatures. The suite of algorithms now provides different levels of cryptographic strength through a variety of key sizes. The algorithms may be combined in many ways to support increasingly complex protocols and applications. This NIST Recommendation applies to U.S. government agencies using cryptography for the protection of their sensitive, unclassified information. This Recommendation may also be followed, on a voluntary basis, by other organizations that want to implement sound security principles in their computer systems.

The proper management of cryptographic keys is essential to the effective use of cryptography for security. Keys are analogous to the combination of a safe. If the combination is known by an adversary, the strongest safe provides no security against penetration. Similarly, poor key management may easily compromise strong algorithms. Ultimately, the security of information protected by cryptography directly depends on the strength of the keys, the effectiveness of mechanisms and protocols associated with the keys, and the protection afforded the keys. Cryptography can be rendered ineffective by the use of weak products, inappropriate algorithm pairing, poor physical security, and the use of weak protocols.

All keys need to be protected against unauthorized substitution and modification. Secret and private keys need to be protected against unauthorized disclosure. Key management provides the foundation for the secure generation, storage, distribution, and destruction of keys.

#### 1.1 Goal/Purpose

Users and developers are presented with many new choices in their use of cryptographic mechanisms. Inappropriate choices may result in an illusion of security, but little or no real security for the protocol or application. This Recommendation (i.e., SP 800-57) provides background information and establishes frameworks to support appropriate decisions when selecting and using cryptographic mechanisms.

#### 1.2 Audience

The audiences for this *Recommendation for Key Management* include system or application owners and managers, cryptographic module developers, protocol developers, and system

40 administrators. The Recommendation has been provided in three parts. The different parts into  
41 which the Recommendation has been divided have been tailored to specific audiences.

42 Part 1 of this Recommendation provides general key management guidance that is intended to  
43 be useful to both system developers and system administrators. Cryptographic module  
44 developers may benefit from this general guidance through a greater understanding of the key  
45 management features that are required to support specific intended ranges of applications.  
46 Protocol developers may identify key management characteristics associated with specific  
47 suites of algorithms and gain a greater understanding of the security services provided by those  
48 algorithms. System administrators may use this Recommendation to determine which  
49 configuration settings are most appropriate for their information.

50 Part 2 of this Recommendation [[SP800-57, Part 2](#)] is tailored for system or application owners  
51 for use in identifying appropriate organizational key management infrastructures, establishing  
52 organizational key management policies, and specifying organizational key management  
53 practices and plans.

54 Part 3 of this Recommendation addresses the key management issues associated with currently  
55 available cryptographic mechanisms and is intended to provide guidance to system installers,  
56 system administrators and end users of existing key management infrastructures, protocols, and  
57 other applications, as well as the people making purchasing decisions for new systems using  
58 currently available technology.

59 Though some background information and rationale are provided for context and to support the  
60 recommendations, this document assumes that the reader has a basic understanding of  
61 cryptography. For background material, readers may look to a variety of NIST and commercial  
62 publications, including [[SP800-32](#)], which provides an introduction to a public-key  
63 infrastructure.

### 64 **1.3 Scope**

65 This Recommendation encompasses cryptographic algorithms, infrastructures, protocols, and  
66 applications, and the management thereof. All cryptographic algorithms currently **approved** by  
67 NIST for the protection of unclassified, but sensitive information are in scope.

68 This Recommendation focuses on issues involving the management of cryptographic keys:  
69 their generation, use, and eventual destruction. Related topics, such as algorithm selection and  
70 appropriate key size, cryptographic policy, and cryptographic module selection, are also  
71 included in this Recommendation. Some of the topics noted above are addressed in other NIST  
72 standards and guidance. This Recommendation supplements more-focused standards and  
73 guidelines.

74 This Recommendation does not address the implementation details for cryptographic modules  
75 that may be used to achieve the security requirements identified. These details are addressed in  
76 [[FIPS 140](#)], the FIPS 140 implementation guidance and the derived test requirements (available  
77 at <http://csrc.nist.gov/groups/STM/cmvp/standards.html>).

78 This Recommendation also does not address the requirements or procedures for operating an  
79 archive, other than discussing the types of keying material that are appropriate to include in an  
80 archive and the protection to be provided to the archived keying material.

81 This Recommendation often uses “requirement” terms; these terms have the following  
82 meaning in this document:

- 83 1. **shall**: This term is used to indicate a requirement of a Federal Information Processing  
84 Standard (FIPS) or a requirement that must be fulfilled to claim conformance to this  
85 Recommendation. Note that **shall** may be coupled with **not** to become **shall not**.
- 86 2. **should**: This term is used to indicate an important recommendation. Ignoring the  
87 recommendation could result in undesirable results. Note that **should** may be coupled  
88 with **not** to become **should not**.

#### 89 **1.4 Purpose of FIPS and NIST Recommendations (NIST Standards)**

90 Federal Information Processing Standards (FIPS) and NIST Recommendations, collectively  
91 referred to as "NIST standards," are valuable because:

- 92 1. They establish an acceptable minimal level of security for U.S. government systems.  
93 Systems that implement these NIST standards offer a consistent level of security  
94 **approved** for the protection of sensitive, unclassified government data.
- 95 2. They often establish some level of interoperability between different systems that  
96 implement the NIST standard. For example, two products that both implement the  
97 Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) cryptographic algorithm have the potential to  
98 interoperate, provided that the other functions of the product are compatible.
- 99 3. They often provide for scalability, because the U.S. government requires products and  
100 techniques that can be effectively applied in large numbers.
- 101 4. They are scrutinized by U.S. government experts and the public to ensure that they  
102 provide a high level of security. The NIST standards process invites broad public  
103 participation, not only through the formal NIST public review process before adoption,  
104 but also by interaction with the open cryptographic community through NIST  
105 workshops, participation in voluntary standards development organizations,  
106 participation in cryptographic research conferences and informal contacts with  
107 researchers. NIST encourages study and cryptanalysis of NIST Standards, and inputs  
108 on their security are welcome at any point, from initial requirements, during  
109 development and after adoption.
- 110 5. **NIST-approved** cryptographic techniques are periodically re-assessed for their  
111 continued effectiveness. If any technique is found to be inadequate for the continued  
112 protection of government information, the NIST standard is revised or discontinued.
- 113 6. The algorithms specified in NIST standards (e.g., AES, TDEA, SHA-1, and DSA) and  
114 the cryptographic modules in which they reside have required conformance tests. These  
115 tests are performed by accredited laboratories on vendor implementations that claim  
116 conformance to the standards. Vendors are permitted to modify non-conforming  
117 implementations so that they meet all applicable requirements. Users of validated  
118 implementations can have a high degree of confidence that validated implementations  
119 conform to the standards.

120 Since 1977, NIST has developed a cryptographic “toolkit” of NIST standards<sup>1</sup> that form a basis  
 121 for the implementation of **approved** cryptography. This Recommendation references many of  
 122 those standards, and provides guidance on how they may be properly used to protect sensitive  
 123 information.

## 124 **1.5 Content and Organization**

125 Part 1, *General Guidance*, contains basic key management guidance. It is intended to advise  
 126 developers and system administrators on the "best practices" associated with key management.

- 127 1. [Section 1](#), *Introduction*, establishes the purpose, scope and intended audience of the  
 128 *Recommendation for Key Management*
- 129 2. [Section 2](#), *Glossary of Terms and Acronyms*, provides definitions of terms and  
 130 acronyms used in this part of the *Recommendation for Key Management*. The reader  
 131 should be aware that the terms used in this Recommendation might be defined  
 132 differently in other documents.
- 133 3. [Section 3](#), *Security Services*, defines the security services that may be provided using  
 134 cryptographic mechanisms.
- 135 4. [Section 4](#), *Cryptographic Algorithms*, provides background information regarding the  
 136 cryptographic algorithms that use cryptographic keying material.
- 137 5. [Section 5](#), *General Key Management Guidance*, classifies the different types of keys  
 138 and other cryptographic information according to their uses, discusses cryptoperiods  
 139 and recommends appropriate cryptoperiods for each key type, provides  
 140 recommendations and requirements for other keying material, introduces assurance of  
 141 domain-parameter and public-key validity, discusses the implications of the  
 142 compromise of keying material, and provides guidance on cryptographic algorithm  
 143 strength selection implementation and replacement.
- 144 6. [Section 6](#), *Protection Requirements for Cryptographic Information*, specifies the  
 145 protection that each type of information requires and identifies methods for providing  
 146 this protection. These protection requirements are of particular interest to cryptographic  
 147 module vendors and application implementers.
- 148 7. [Section 7](#), *Key State and Transitions*, identifies the states in which a cryptographic key  
 149 may exist during its lifetime.
- 150 8. [Section 8](#), *Key Management Phases and Functions*, identifies four phases and a  
 151 multitude of functions involved in key management. This section is of particular  
 152 interest to cryptographic module vendors and developers of cryptographic infrastructure  
 153 services.
- 154 9. [Section 9](#), *Accountability, Audit, and Survivability*, discusses three control principles  
 155 that are used to protect the keying material identified in Section 5.1.
- 156 10. [Section 10](#), *Key Management Specifications for Cryptographic Devices or*  
 157 *Applications*, specifies the content and requirements for key management

---

<sup>1</sup> The toolkit consists of publications specifying algorithms and guidance for their use, rather than software code.

158 specifications. Topics covered include the communications environment, component  
 159 requirements, keying material storage, access control, accounting, and compromise  
 160 recovery.

161 Appendices [A](#) and [B](#) are provided to supplement the main text where a topic demands a more  
 162 detailed treatment. [Appendix C](#) contains a list of appropriate references, and [Appendix D](#)  
 163 contains a list of changes since the originally published version of this document.

## 164 2 Glossary of Terms and Acronyms

165 The definitions provided below are defined as used in this document. The same terms may be  
 166 defined differently in other documents.

### 167 2.1 Glossary

Access control	Restricts access to resources to only privileged entities.
Accountability	A property that ensures that the actions of an entity may be traced uniquely to that entity.
Algorithm originator-usage period	The period of time during which a specific cryptographic algorithm may be used by originators to apply protection to data (e.g., encrypt or generate a digital signature).
Algorithm security lifetime	The estimated time period during which data protected by a specific cryptographic algorithm remains secure.
Approved	FIPS- <b>approved</b> and/or NIST-recommended. An algorithm or technique that is either 1) specified in a FIPS or NIST Recommendation, or 2) specified elsewhere and adopted by reference in a FIPS or NIST Recommendation.
Archive	1. To place information into long-term storage. 2. A location or media used for long-term storage.
Association	A relationship for a particular purpose. For example, a key is associated with the application or process for which it will be used.
Assurance of (private key) possession	Confidence that an entity possesses a private key and its associated keying material.
Assurance of validity	Confidence that a public key or domain parameter is arithmetically correct.
Asymmetric key algorithm	See Public-key cryptographic algorithm.
Authentication	A process that provides assurance of the source and integrity of information in communications sessions, messages, documents or stored data.
Authentication code	A keyed cryptographic checksum based on an <b>approved</b> security function (also known as a Message Authentication Code).

Authorization	Access privileges that are granted to an entity; conveying an “official” sanction to perform a security function or activity.
Availability	Timely, reliable access to information by authorized entities.
Backup	A copy of information to facilitate recovery during the cryptoperiod of the key, if necessary.
Certificate	See Public-key certificate.
Certification authority	The entity in a Public Key Infrastructure (PKI) that issues certificates to certificate subjects.
Ciphertext	Data in its encrypted form.
Collision	Two or more distinct inputs produce the same output. Also see Hash function.
Compromise	The unauthorized disclosure, modification, substitution or use of sensitive data (e.g., keying material and other security-related information).
Confidentiality	The property that sensitive information is not disclosed to unauthorized entities.
Contingency plan	A plan that is maintained for disaster response, backup operations, and post-disaster recovery to ensure the availability of critical resources and to facilitate the continuity of operations in an emergency situation.
Contingency planning	The development of a contingency plan.
Cryptanalysis	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Operations performed to defeat cryptographic protection without an initial knowledge of the key employed in providing the protection.</li> <li>2. The study of mathematical techniques for attempting to defeat cryptographic techniques and information system security. This includes the process of looking for errors or weaknesses in the implementation of an algorithm or in the algorithm itself.</li> </ol>
Cryptographic algorithm	A well-defined computational procedure that takes variable inputs, including a cryptographic key, and produces an output.
Cryptographic boundary	An explicitly defined continuous perimeter that establishes the physical bounds of a cryptographic module and contains all hardware, software, and/or firmware components of a cryptographic module.
Cryptographic hash function	See Hash function.

Cryptographic key (key)	<p>A parameter used in conjunction with a cryptographic algorithm that determines its operation in such a way that an entity with knowledge of the key can reproduce, reverse or verify the operation, while an entity without knowledge of the key cannot. Examples include:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The transformation of plaintext data into ciphertext data,</li> <li>2. The transformation of ciphertext data into plaintext data,</li> <li>3. The computation of a digital signature from data,</li> <li>4. The verification of a digital signature on data,</li> <li>5. The computation of an authentication code from data,</li> <li>6. The verification of an authentication code from data and a received authentication code,</li> <li>7. The computation of a shared secret that is used to derive keying material.</li> </ol>
Cryptographic key component (key component)	<p>One of at least two parameters that have the same security properties (e.g., randomness) as a cryptographic key; parameters are combined in an <b>approved</b> security function to form a plaintext cryptographic key before use.</p>
Cryptographic module	<p>The set of hardware, software, and/or firmware that implements <b>approved</b> security functions (including cryptographic algorithms and key generation) and is contained within the cryptographic boundary.</p>
Cryptoperiod	<p>The time span during which a specific key is authorized for use or in which the keys for a given system or application may remain in effect.</p>
Data-encryption key	<p>A key used to encrypt and decrypt information other than keys.</p>
Data integrity	<p>A property whereby data has not been altered in an unauthorized manner since it was created, transmitted or stored.</p>
Decryption	<p>The process of changing ciphertext into plaintext using a cryptographic algorithm and key.</p>
Deterministic random bit generator (DRBG)	<p>A random bit generator that includes a DRBG algorithm and (at least initially) has access to a source of randomness. The DRBG produces a sequence of bits from a secret initial value called a seed, along with other possible inputs. A cryptographic DRBG has the additional property that the output is unpredictable, given that the seed is not known. A DRBG is sometimes also called a Pseudo Random Number Generator (PRNG) or a deterministic random number generator.</p>

Digital signature	The result of a cryptographic transformation of data that, when properly implemented with a supporting infrastructure and policy, provides the services of: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Origin (i.e., source) authentication,</li> <li>2. Data integrity authentication, and</li> <li>3. Support for signer non-repudiation.</li> </ol>
Distribution	See Key distribution.
Domain parameter	A parameter used in conjunction with some public-key algorithms to generate key pairs, to create digital signatures, or to establish keying material.
Encrypted key	A cryptographic key that has been encrypted using an <b>approved</b> security function in order to disguise the value of the underlying plaintext key.
Encryption	The process of changing plaintext into ciphertext using a cryptographic algorithm and key.
Entity	An individual (person), organization, device or process.
Ephemeral key	A cryptographic key that is generated for each execution of a key-establishment process and that meets other requirements of the key type (e.g., unique to each message or session).  In some cases, ephemeral keys are used more than once within a single session (e.g., for broadcast applications) where the sender generates only one ephemeral key pair per message, and the private key is combined separately with each recipient's public key.
Hash-based message authentication code (HMAC)	A message authentication code that uses an <b>approved</b> keyed-hash function (i.e., <a href="#">[FIPS 198]</a> ).
Hash function	A function that maps a bit string of arbitrary length to a fixed-length bit string. <b>Approved</b> hash functions satisfy the following properties: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. (One-way) It is computationally infeasible to find any input that maps to any pre-specified output, and</li> <li>2. (Collision resistant) It is computationally infeasible to find any two distinct inputs that map to the same output.</li> </ol>
Hash value	The result of applying a hash function to information.
Identifier	A bit string that is associated with a person, device or organization. It may be an identifying name, or may be something more abstract (for example, a string consisting of an IP address and timestamp), depending on the application.
Identity	The distinguishing character or personality of an entity.

Initialization vector (IV)	A vector used in defining the starting point of a cryptographic process.
Integrity (also, Assurance of integrity)	See Data integrity.
Integrity authentication	The process of providing assurance that data has not been modified since an authentication code was created for that data.
Integrity protection	See Integrity authentication.
Key	See Cryptographic key.
Key agreement	A key-establishment procedure where resultant keying material is a function of information contributed by two or more participants, so that no party can predetermine the value of the keying material independently of any other party's contribution.
Key component	See Cryptographic key component.
Key confirmation	A procedure used to provide assurance to one party that another party actually possesses the same keying material and/or shared secret.
Key de-registration	A function in the lifecycle of keying material; the marking of all keying material records and associations to indicate that the key is no longer in use.
Key derivation	The process by which one or more keys are derived from either a pre-shared key, or a shared secret (from a key-agreement scheme) and other information.
Key-derivation function	A function that, with the input of a cryptographic key or shared secret, and possibly other data, generates a binary string, called keying material.
Key-derivation key	A key used with a key-derivation function or method to derive additional keys. Sometimes called a master key.
Key-derivation method	A key-derivation function or other <b>approved</b> procedure for deriving keying material.
Key destruction	To remove all traces of keying material so that it cannot be recovered by either physical or electronic means.
Key distribution	The transport of a key and other keying material from an entity that either owns or generates the key to another entity that is intended to use the key.
Key-encrypting key	A cryptographic key that is used for the encryption or decryption of other keys to provide confidentiality protection. Also see Key-wrapping key.

Key establishment	A function in the lifecycle of keying material; the process by which cryptographic keys are securely established among cryptographic modules using manual transport methods (e.g., key loaders), automated methods (e.g., key-transport and/or key-agreement protocols), or a combination of automated and manual methods.
Key length	The length of a key in bits; used interchangeably with “Key size”.
Key management	The activities involving the handling of cryptographic keys and other related security parameters (e.g., passwords) during the entire lifecycle of the keys, including their generation, storage, establishment, entry and output, use and destruction.
Key Management Policy	A high-level statement of organizational key management policies that identifies a high-level structure, responsibilities, governing standards, organizational dependencies and other relationships, and security policies.
Key Management Practices Statement	A document or set of documents that describes, in detail, the organizational structure, responsible roles, and organization rules for the functions identified in the Key Management Policy.
Key pair	A public key and its corresponding private key; a key pair is used with a public-key algorithm.
Key recovery	A function in the lifecycle of keying material; mechanisms and processes that allow authorized entities to retrieve or reconstruct keying material from key backup or archive.
Key registration	A function in the lifecycle of keying material; the process of officially recording the keying material by a registration authority.
Key revocation	A function in the lifecycle of keying material; a process whereby a notice is made available to affected entities that keying material should be removed from operational use prior to the end of the established cryptoperiod of that keying material.
Key size	The length of a key in bits; used interchangeably with “Key length”.
Key transport	<p>A key-establishment procedure whereby one party (the sender) selects and encrypts (or wraps) the keying material and then distributes the material to another party (the receiver).</p> <p>When used in conjunction with a public-key (asymmetric) algorithm, the keying material is encrypted using the public key of the receiver and subsequently decrypted using the private key of the receiver.</p> <p>When used in conjunction with a symmetric algorithm, the keying material is encrypted with a key-wrapping key shared by the two parties.</p>
Key update	A function performed on a cryptographic key in order to compute a new key that is related to the old key.

Key-usage period	For a symmetric key, either the originator-usage period or the recipient-usage period.
Key wrapping	A method of cryptographically protecting keys using a symmetric key that provides both confidentiality and integrity protection.
Key-wrapping key	A symmetric key-encrypting key that is used to provide both confidentiality and integrity protection. Also see Key-encrypting key.
Keying material	The data (e.g., keys and IVs) necessary to establish and maintain cryptographic keying relationships.
Manual key transport	A non-automated means of transporting cryptographic keys by physically moving a device or document containing the key or key component.
Master key	See Key-derivation key.
Message authentication code (MAC)	A cryptographic checksum on data that uses an <b>approved</b> security function and a symmetric key to detect both accidental and intentional modifications of data.
Metadata	Information used to describe specific characteristics, constraints, acceptable uses and parameters of another data item (e.g., a cryptographic key).
NIST standards	Federal Information Processing Standards (FIPS) and NIST Recommendations.
Non-repudiation	A service using a digital signature that is used to support a determination of whether a message was actually signed by a given entity.
Operational phase (Operational use)	A phase in the lifecycle of keying material whereby keying material is used for standard cryptographic purposes.
Operational storage	The normal storage of operational keying material during its cryptoperiod.
Owner	For a static key pair, the entity that is associated with the public key and authorized to use the private key. For an ephemeral key pair, the owner is the entity that generated the public/private key pair. For a symmetric key, the owner is any entity that is authorized to use the key.
Originator-usage period	The period of time in the cryptoperiod of a key during which cryptographic protection may be applied to data.
Password	A string of characters (letters, numbers and other symbols) that are used to authenticate an identity, to verify access authorization or to derive cryptographic keys.
Period of protection	The period of time during which the integrity and/or confidentiality of a key needs to be maintained.

Plaintext	Intelligible data that has meaning and can be understood without the application of decryption.
Private key	<p>A cryptographic key, used with a public-key cryptographic algorithm that is uniquely associated with an entity and is not made public. In an asymmetric (public) cryptosystem, the private key has a corresponding public key. Depending on the algorithm, the private key may be used, for example, to:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Compute the corresponding public key,</li> <li>2. Compute a digital signature that may be verified by the corresponding public key,</li> <li>3. Decrypt keys that were encrypted by the corresponding public key, or</li> <li>4. Compute a shared secret during a key-agreement transaction.</li> </ol>
Proof of possession (POP)	A verification process whereby assurance is obtained that the owner of a key pair actually has the private key associated with the public key.
Pseudorandom number generator (PRNG)	See Deterministic random bit generator (DRBG).
Public key	<p>A cryptographic key, used with a public-key cryptographic algorithm, that is uniquely associated with an entity and that may be made public. In an asymmetric (public) cryptosystem, the public key has a corresponding private key. The public key may be known by anyone and, depending on the algorithm, may be used, for example, to:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Verify a digital signature that is signed by the corresponding private key,</li> <li>2. Encrypt keys that can be decrypted using the corresponding private key, or</li> <li>3. Compute a shared secret during a key-agreement transaction.</li> </ol>
Public-key certificate	A set of data that uniquely identifies an entity, contains the entity's public key and possibly other information, and is digitally signed by a trusted party, thereby binding the public key to the entity. Additional information in the certificate could specify how the key is used and its cryptoperiod.
Public-key (asymmetric) cryptographic algorithm	A cryptographic algorithm that uses two related keys: a public key and a private key. The two keys have the property that determining the private key from the public key is computationally infeasible.
Public Key Infrastructure (PKI)	A framework that is established to issue, maintain and revoke public key certificates.

Random bit generator (RBG)	A device or algorithm that outputs a sequence of bits that appears to be statistically independent and unbiased. Also, see Random number generator.
Random number generator (RNG)	A process used to generate an unpredictable series of numbers. Also called a Random bit generator (RBG).
Recipient-usage period	The period of time during the cryptoperiod of a key in which the protected information is processed (e.g., decrypted).
Registration authority	A trusted entity that establishes and vouches for the identity of a user.
Retention period	The minimum amount of time that a key or other cryptographically related information should be retained in the archive.
RBG seed	A string of bits that is used to initialize a DRBG. Also just called a "seed."
Secret key	A cryptographic key that is used with a secret-key (symmetric) cryptographic algorithm that is uniquely associated with one or more entities and is not made public. The use of the term "secret" in this context does not imply a classification level, but rather implies the need to protect the key from disclosure.
Secure communication protocol	A communication protocol that provides the appropriate confidentiality, source authentication, and data integrity protection.
Security domain	A system or subsystem that is under the authority of a single trusted authority. Security domains may be organized (e.g., hierarchically) to form larger domains.
Security life of data	The time period during which the security of the data needs to be protected (e.g., its confidentiality, integrity or availability).
Security services	Mechanisms used to provide confidentiality, integrity authentication, source authentication and/or support non-repudiation of information.
Security strength (Also "bits of security")	A number associated with the amount of work (that is, the number of operations) that is required to break a cryptographic algorithm or system. In this Recommendation, the security strength is specified in bits and is a specific value from the set {80, 112, 128, 192, 256}. Note that a security strength of 80 bits is not longer considered sufficiently secure.
Seed	A secret value that is used to initialize a process (e.g., a DRBG). Also see RBG seed.
Self-signed certificate	A public-key certificate whose digital signature may be verified by the public key contained within the certificate. The signature on a self-signed certificate protects the integrity of the data, but does not guarantee the authenticity of the information. The trust of self-signed certificates is based on the secure procedures used to distribute them.

<b>Shall</b>	This term is used to indicate a requirement of a Federal Information Processing Standard (FIPS) or a requirement that must be fulfilled to claim conformance to this Recommendation. Note that <b>shall</b> may be coupled with <b>not</b> to become <b>shall not</b> .
Shared secret	A secret value that has been computed using a key-agreement scheme and is used as input to a key-derivation function/method.
<b>Should</b>	This term is used to indicate a very important recommendation. Ignoring the recommendation could result in undesirable results. Note that <b>should</b> may be coupled with <b>not</b> to become <b>should not</b> .
Signature generation	The use of a digital signature algorithm and a private key to generate a digital signature on data.
Signature verification	The use of a digital signature algorithm and a public key to verify a digital signature on data.
Source authentication	The process of providing assurance about the source of information. Sometimes called identity authentication or origin authentication.
Split knowledge	<p>A process by which a cryptographic key is split into <math>n</math> multiple key components, each of which provides no knowledge of the original key. The components can be subsequently combined to recreate the original cryptographic key. If knowledge of <math>k</math> (where <math>k</math> is less than or equal to <math>n</math>) components is required to construct the original key, then knowledge of any <math>k-1</math> key components provides no information about the original key other than, possibly, its length.</p> <p>Note that in this Recommendation, split knowledge is not intended to cover key shares, such as those used in threshold or multi-party signatures.</p>
Static key	A key that is intended for use for a relatively long period of time and is typically intended for use in many instances of a cryptographic key-establishment scheme. Contrast with an Ephemeral key.
Symmetric key	A single cryptographic key that is used with a secret (symmetric) key algorithm.
Symmetric-key algorithm	A cryptographic algorithm that uses the same secret key for an operation and its complement (e.g., encryption and decryption).
System initialization	A function in the lifecycle of keying material; setting up and configuring a system for secure operation.

Trust anchor	<p>1. An authoritative entity for which trust is assumed. In a PKI, a trust anchor is a certification authority, which is represented by a certificate that is used to verify the signature on a certificate issued by that trust-anchor. The security of the validation process depends upon the authenticity and integrity of the trust anchor's certificate. Trust anchor certificates are often distributed as self-signed certificates.</p> <p>2. The self-signed public key certificate of a trusted CA.</p>
Unauthorized disclosure	An event involving the exposure of information to entities not authorized access to the information.
User	See Entity.
User initialization	A function in the lifecycle of keying material; the process whereby a user initializes its cryptographic application (e.g., installing and initializing software and hardware).
User registration	A function in the lifecycle of keying material; a process whereby an entity becomes a member of a security domain.
X.509 certificate	The X.509 public-key certificate or the X.509 attribute certificate, as defined by the ISO/ITU-T X.509 standard. Most commonly (including in this document), an X.509 certificate refers to the X.509 public-key certificate.
X.509 public-key certificate	A digital certificate containing a public key for an entity and a name for that entity, together with some other information that is rendered un-forgable by the digital signature of the certification authority that issued the certificate, encoded in the format defined in the ISO/ITU-T X.509 standard.

## 168 2.2 Acronyms

169 The following abbreviations and acronyms are used in this Recommendation:

2TDEA	Two-key Triple Data Encryption Algorithm specified in <a href="#">[SP800-67]</a> .
3TDEA	Three-key Triple Data Encryption Algorithm specified in <a href="#">[SP800-67]</a> .
AES	Advanced Encryption Standard specified in <a href="#">[FIPS197]</a> .
ANS	American National Standard.
ANSI	American National Standards Institute.
CA	Certification Authority.
CRC	Cyclic Redundancy Check.
CRL	Certificate Revocation List.
DRBG	Deterministic Random Bit Generator.
DSA	Digital Signature Algorithm specified in <a href="#">[FIPS186]</a> .

ECC	Elliptic Curve Cryptography.
ECDSA	Elliptic Curve Digital Signature Algorithm specified in <a href="#">[ANSX9.62]</a> and <b>approved</b> in <a href="#">[FIPS186]</a> .
FFC	Finite Field Cryptography.
FIPS	Federal Information Processing Standard.
HMAC	Keyed-Hash Message Authentication Code specified in <a href="#">[FIPS198]</a> .
IFC	Integer Factorization Cryptography.
IV	Initialization Vector.
MAC	Message Authentication Code.
NIST	National Institute of Standards and Technology.
PKI	Public-Key Infrastructure.
POP	Proof of Possession.
RA	Registration Authority.
RBG	Random Bit Generator.
RNG	Random Number Generator.
RSA	Rivest, Shamir, Adelman; an algorithm <b>approved</b> in <a href="#">[FIPS186]</a> for digital signatures and in <a href="#">[SP800-56B]</a> for <b>key establishment</b> .
SMIME	Secure Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions.
TDEA	Triple Data Encryption Algorithm; Triple DEA specified in <a href="#">[SP800-67]</a> .
TLS	Transport Layer Security

170

### 171 **3 Security Services**

172 Cryptography may be used to perform or support several basic security services:  
 173 confidentiality, integrity authentication, source authentication, authorization and non-  
 174 repudiation. These services may also be required to protect cryptographic keying material. In  
 175 addition, there are other cryptographic and non-cryptographic mechanisms that are used to  
 176 support these security services. In general, a single cryptographic mechanism may provide  
 177 more than one service (e.g., the use of digital signatures can provide integrity authentication,  
 178 and source authentication), but not all services.

#### 179 **3.1 Confidentiality**

180 Confidentiality is the property whereby information is not disclosed to unauthorized parties.  
 181 Secrecy is a term that is often used synonymously with confidentiality. Confidentiality is  
 182 achieved using encryption to render the information unintelligible except by authorized  
 183 entities. The information may become intelligible again by using decryption. In order for  
 184 encryption to provide confidentiality, the cryptographic algorithm and mode of operation must  
 185 be designed and implemented so that an unauthorized party cannot determine the secret or

186 private keys associated with the encryption or be able to derive the plaintext directly without  
187 deriving any keys.

### 188 **3.2 Data Integrity**

189 Data integrity is a property whereby data has not been altered in an unauthorized manner since  
190 it was created, transmitted or stored. Alteration includes the insertion, deletion and substitution  
191 of data. Cryptographic mechanisms, such as message authentication codes or digital signatures,  
192 can be used to detect (with a high probability) both accidental modifications (e.g.,  
193 modifications that sometimes occur during noisy transmissions or by hardware memory  
194 failures) and deliberate modifications by an adversary. Non-cryptographic mechanisms are also  
195 often used to detect accidental modifications, but cannot be relied upon to detect deliberate  
196 modifications. A more detailed treatment of this subject is provided in [Appendix A](#).

197 In this Recommendation, the statement that a cryptographic algorithm "provides data integrity"  
198 means that the algorithm is used to detect unauthorized alterations. Authenticating integrity is  
199 discussed in the next section.

### 200 **3.3 Authentication**

201 Two types of authentication services can be provided using cryptography: integrity  
202 authentication and source authentication.

- 203 • An integrity authentication service is used to verify that data has not been modified,  
204 i.e., this service provides integrity protection.
- 205 • A source authentication service is used to verify the identity of the user or system that  
206 created information (e.g., a transaction or message).

207 Several cryptographic mechanisms may be used to provide authentication services. Most  
208 commonly, authentication is provided by digital signatures or message authentication codes;  
209 some key-agreement techniques also provide an authentication service.

210 When multiple individuals are permitted to share the same source authentication information  
211 (such as a password or cryptographic key), it is sometimes called role-based authentication.  
212 See [\[FIPS140\]](#).

### 213 **3.4 Authorization**

214 Authorization is concerned with providing an official sanction or permission to perform a  
215 security function or activity (e.g., accessing a room). Authorization is considered as a security  
216 service that is often supported by a cryptographic service. Normally, authorization is granted  
217 after the execution of a successful source authentication<sup>2</sup> service. A non-cryptographic analog  
218 of the interaction between source authentication and authorization is the examination of an  
219 individual's credentials to establish their identity (the source authentication process); after  
220 verifying the individual's identity and verifying that the individual is authorized access to some  
221 resource, such as a locked room, the individual is then provided with the key or password that  
222 will allow access to that room.

---

<sup>2</sup> Sometimes referred to as identity authentication.

223 Source authentication can also be used to authorize a role (such as a system administrator or  
224 audit role), rather than to identify an individual. Once authenticated for a role, an entity is  
225 authorized for all the privileges associated with that role.

### 226 **3.5 Non-repudiation**

227 In key management, non-repudiation is a term associated with digital signature keys and digital  
228 certificates that bind the name of the certificate subject to a public key. When non-repudiation  
229 is indicated for a digital signature key, it means that the signatures created by that key support  
230 not only the usual integrity and source authentication services of digital signatures, but also  
231 may (depending upon the context of the signature) indicate commitment by the certificate  
232 subject, in the same sense that a handwritten signature on a document may indicate  
233 commitment to a contract.

234 Digital signature keys in public key certificates may be designated in the certificate as digital  
235 signature or non-repudiation keys, or both. In practice, if non-repudiation is designated, a  
236 digital signature will normally also be designated.

237 A key for which only a digital signature is indicated (and non-repudiation is not indicated) is  
238 meant for source authentication, typically in a protocol such as TLS, where a certificate subject  
239 authenticates its identity by digitally signing a challenge with the private key. A key where  
240 only a digital signature is designated might also be used to sign an e-mail message to  
241 authenticate the source of that message. Regardless of the digital signature or non-repudiation  
242 designation, the digital signature can also be used to provide integrity authentication, as well.

243 If both digital signature and non-repudiation are indicated, that means that the key may be used  
244 not only to authenticate the source and provide integrity protection, but also, possibly, for  
245 “commitment,” in the sense of accepting or agreeing to some terms or conditions. Whether or  
246 not commitment is implied, when a non-repudiation key is used to sign a message, its intent is  
247 determined by the message contents and the circumstances surrounding the signature. This is  
248 similar to the determination of whether a handwritten signature is simply an acknowledgement  
249 of receipt, or an agreement to some terms or conditions.

250 Where non-repudiation is indicated, certificate policies commonly include provisions intended  
251 to ensure that only one copy of the private key exists, and no party, other than the certificate  
252 subject, ever has control of that private key. This is done to protect against repudiation of the  
253 signature on the grounds that some party other than the certificate subject might have executed  
254 the signature.

255 In reality, a determination of non-repudiation is a legal decision with many aspects to be  
256 considered. Cryptographic mechanisms can only be used as one element in this decision.

### 257 **3.6 Support Services**

258 These basic cryptographic security services often require other supporting services. For  
259 example, cryptographic services often require the use of key establishment and random number  
260 generation services.

### 261 **3.7 Combining Services**

262 In many applications, a combination of cryptographic services (confidentiality, integrity  
263 authentication, source authentication, and support for non-repudiation) is desired. Designers of

264 secure systems often begin by considering which security services are needed to protect the  
265 information contained within and processed by the system. After these services have been  
266 determined, the designer then considers what mechanisms will best provide these services. Not  
267 all mechanisms are cryptographic in nature. For example, physical security may be used to  
268 protect the confidentiality of certain types of data, and identification badges or biometric  
269 identification devices may be used for source authentication. However, cryptographic  
270 mechanisms consisting of algorithms, keys, and other keying material often provide the most  
271 cost-effective means of protecting the security of information. This is particularly true in  
272 applications where the information would otherwise be exposed to unauthorized entities.

273 When properly implemented, some cryptographic algorithms provide multiple services. The  
274 following examples illustrate this case:

- 275 1. A message authentication code ([Section 4.2.3](#)) can provide source authentication, as  
276 well as integrity authentication if the symmetric keys are unique to each pair of users.
- 277 2. A digital signature algorithm ([Section 4.2.4](#)) can provide source authentication and  
278 integrity authentication, as well as to support a non-repudiation decision.
- 279 3. Certain modes of encryption can provide confidentiality, integrity authentication, and  
280 source authentication when properly implemented. These modes **should** be specifically  
281 designed to provide these services.

282 However, it is often the case that different algorithms need to be employed in order to provide  
283 all the desired services.

284 Example:

285 Consider a system where the secure exchange of information between pairs of Internet  
286 entities is needed. Some of the exchanged information requires just integrity protection,  
287 while other information requires both integrity and confidentiality protection. It is also a  
288 requirement that each entity that participates in an information exchange knows the identity  
289 of the other entity.

290 The designers of this example system decide that a Public Key Infrastructure (PKI) needs  
291 to be established and that each entity wishing to communicate securely is required to  
292 physically prove his or her identity to a Registration Authority (RA). This identity-proving  
293 process requires the presentation of proper credentials, such as a driver's license, passport  
294 or birth certificate. After establishing their correct identity, the individuals then generate a  
295 public static key pair in a smart card that is later used for key agreement. The public static  
296 key-agreement key is transferred from the smart card to the RA, where it is incorporated  
297 with the user identifier and other information into a digitally signed message for  
298 transmission to a Certification Authority (CA). The CA then composes the user's public-  
299 key certificate by signing the public key of the user and the user's identifier, along with  
300 other information. This certificate is returned to the public-key owner so that it may be  
301 used in conjunction with the private key (under the sole control of the owner) for source-  
302 authentication and key-agreement purposes.

303 In this example, any two entities wishing to communicate may exchange public-key  
304 certificates containing public keys that are checked by verifying the CA's signature on the  
305 certificate (using the CA's public key). The public static key-agreement key of each of the  
306 two entities and each entity's own private static key-agreement key are then used in a key-

307 agreement scheme to produce a shared secret that is known by the two entities. The shared  
308 secret may then be used to derive one or more shared symmetric keys. If the mode of the  
309 symmetric-encryption algorithm is designed to support all the desired services, then only  
310 one shared key is necessary. Otherwise, multiple shared keys and algorithms are used, e.g.,  
311 one of the shared keys is used to encrypt for confidentiality, while another key is used for  
312 data integrity and source authentication. The receiver of the data protected by the key(s)  
313 has assurance that the data came from the other entity indicated by the public-key  
314 certificate, that the data remains confidential, and that the integrity of the data is preserved.

315 Alternatively, if confidentiality is not required, integrity authentication and source  
316 authentication can be attained by establishing a digital-signature key pair and  
317 corresponding certificate for each entity. The private signature key of the sender is used to  
318 sign the data, and the sender's public signature-verification key is used by the receiver to  
319 verify the signature. In this case, a single algorithm provides all three services.

320 The above example provides a basic sketch of how cryptographic algorithms may be used to  
321 support multiple security services. However, it can be easily seen that the security of such a  
322 system depends on many factors, including:

- 323 a. The strength of the entity's credentials (e.g., driver's license, passport or birth  
324 certificate) and the identity authentication process,
- 325 b. The strength of the cryptographic algorithms used,
- 326 c. The degree of trust placed in the RA and the CA,
- 327 d. The strength of the key-establishment protocols, and
- 328 e. The care taken by the users in generating their keys and protecting them from  
329 unauthorized use.

330 Therefore, the design of a security system that provides the desired security services by making  
331 use of cryptographic algorithms and sound key-management techniques requires a high degree  
332 of skill and expertise.

## 333 **4 Cryptographic Algorithms**

334 FIPS-**approved** or NIST-recommended cryptographic algorithms **shall** be used whenever  
335 cryptographic services are required. These **approved** algorithms have received an intensive  
336 security analysis prior to their approval and continue to be examined to determine that the  
337 algorithms provide adequate security. Most cryptographic algorithms require cryptographic  
338 keys or other keying material. In some cases, an algorithm may be strengthened by the use of  
339 larger keys. This Recommendation advises the users of cryptographic mechanisms on the  
340 appropriate choices of algorithms and key sizes.

341 This section describes the **approved** cryptographic algorithms that provide security services,  
342 such as confidentiality, integrity authentication, and source authentication.

#### 343 4.1 Classes of Cryptographic Algorithms

344 There are three basic classes of **approved** cryptographic algorithms: hash functions,  
345 symmetric-key algorithms and asymmetric-key algorithms. The classes are defined by the  
346 number of cryptographic keys that are used in conjunction with the algorithm.

347 Cryptographic hash functions do not require keys for their basic operation. Hash functions  
348 generate a relatively small digest (hash value) from a (possibly) large input in a way that is  
349 fundamentally difficult to reverse (i.e., it is hard to find an input that will produce a given  
350 output). Hash functions are used as building blocks for key management, for example,

- 351 1. To provide source and integrity authentication services ([Section 4.2.3](#)) – the hash  
352 function is used with a key to generate a message authentication code;
- 353 2. To compress messages for digital signature generation and verification ([Section 4.2.4](#));
- 354 3. To derive keys in key-establishment algorithms ([Section 4.2.5](#)); and
- 355 4. To generate deterministic random numbers ([Section 4.2.7](#)).

356 Symmetric-key algorithms (sometimes known as secret-key algorithms) transform data in a  
357 way that is fundamentally difficult to undo without knowledge of a secret key. The key is  
358 “symmetric” because the same key is used for a cryptographic operation and its inverse (e.g.,  
359 encryption and decryption). Symmetric keys are often known by more than one entity;  
360 however, the key **shall not** be disclosed to entities that are not authorized access to the data  
361 protected by that algorithm and key. Symmetric key algorithms are used, for example,

- 362 1. To provide data confidentiality ([Section 4.2.2](#)); the same key is used to encrypt and  
363 decrypt data;
- 364 2. To provide source and integrity authentication services ([Section 4.2.3](#)) in the form of  
365 Message Authentication Codes (MACs); the same key is used to generate the MAC and  
366 to validate it. MACs normally employ either a symmetric key-encryption algorithm or a  
367 cryptographic hash function as their cryptographic primitive;
- 368 3. As part of the key-establishment process ([Section 4.2.5](#)); and
- 369 4. To generate deterministic random numbers ([Section 4.2.7](#)).

370 Asymmetric-key algorithms, commonly known as public-key algorithms, use two related keys  
371 (i.e., a key pair) to perform their functions: a public key and a private key. The public key may  
372 be known by anyone; the private key **should** be under the sole control of the entity that “owns”  
373 the key pair<sup>3</sup>. Even though the public and private keys of a key pair are related, knowledge of  
374 the public key cannot be used to determine the private key. Asymmetric algorithms are used,  
375 for example,

- 376 1. To compute digital signatures ([Section 4.2.4](#)), and
- 377 2. To establish cryptographic keying material ([Section 4.2.5](#))

---

<sup>3</sup> Sometimes a key pair is generated by a party that is trusted by the key owner.

## 378 **4.2 Cryptographic Algorithm Functionality**

379 Security services are fulfilled using a number of different algorithms. In many cases, the same  
380 algorithm may be used to provide multiple services.

### 381 **4.2.1 Hash Functions**

382 Many algorithms and schemes that provide a security service use a hash function as a  
383 component of the algorithm. Hash functions can be found in digital signature algorithms (see  
384 [\[FIPS186\]](#)), Keyed-Hash Message Authentication Codes (HMAC) (see [\[FIPS198\]](#)), key-  
385 derivation functions/methods (see [\[SP800-56A\]](#), [\[SP800-56B\]](#), [\[SP800-56C\]](#) and [\[SP800-  
386 108\]](#)), and random number generators (see [\[SP800-90\]](#)). **Approved** hash functions are defined  
387 in [\[FIPS180\]](#) and [\[FIPS202\]](#).

388 A hash function takes an input of arbitrary length and outputs a fixed-length value. Common  
389 names for the output of a hash function include hash value, hash, message digest, and digital  
390 fingerprint. The maximum number of input and output bits is determined by the design of the  
391 hash function. All **approved** hash functions are cryptographic hash functions. With a well-  
392 designed cryptographic hash function, it is not feasible to find a message that will produce a  
393 given hash value (pre-image resistance), nor is it feasible to find two messages that produce the  
394 same hash value (collision resistance).

395 Several hash functions are **approved** for Federal Government use and are defined in [\[FIPS180\]](#)  
396 and FIPS 202. Algorithm standards need to specify either the appropriate size for the hash  
397 function or provide the hash-function selection criteria if the algorithm can be configured to  
398 use different hash functions.

### 399 **4.2.2 Symmetric-Key Algorithms used for Encryption and Decryption**

400 Encryption is used to provide confidentiality for data. The data to be protected is called  
401 plaintext when in its original form. Encryption transforms the data into ciphertext. Ciphertext  
402 can be transformed back into plaintext using decryption. The **approved** algorithms for  
403 encryption/decryption are symmetric key algorithms: AES and TDEA. Each of these  
404 algorithms operates on blocks (chunks) of data during an encryption or decryption operation.  
405 For this reason, these algorithms are commonly called block cipher algorithms.

#### 406 **4.2.2.1 Advanced Encryption Standard (AES)**

407 The AES algorithm is specified in [\[FIPS197\]](#). AES encrypts and decrypts data in 128-bit  
408 blocks, using 128, 192 or 256-bit keys. The nomenclature for AES for the different key sizes is  
409 AES- $x$ , where  $x$  is the key size (e.g., AES-256). All three key sizes are considered adequate for  
410 most Federal Government applications.

#### 411 **4.2.2.2 Triple DEA (TDEA)**

412 Triple DEA is defined in [\[SP800-67\]](#). TDEA encrypts and decrypts data in 64-bit blocks, using  
413 three 56-bit keys. Two variations of TDEA have been defined: two-key TDEA (2TDEA), in  
414 which the first and third keys are identical, and three-key TDEA, in which the three keys are all  
415 different (i.e., distinct).

416 The use of two-key TDEA will no longer be approved for applying cryptographic protection  
417 (e.g., encryption) after December 31, 2015 (see [\[SP800-131A\]](#)); however, two-key TDEA may  
418 continue to be used for processing already-protected information (e.g., decryption).

419 Federal applications **shall** only use three distinct keys whenever using TDEA for applying  
420 cryptographic protection after the end of 2015; see [Table 2 in Section 5.6.1](#) and [SP800-131A]  
421 for further guidance.

#### 422 **4.2.2.3 Modes of Operation**

423 With a block-cipher encryption operation, the same plaintext block will always encrypt to the  
424 same ciphertext block whenever the same key is used. If the multiple blocks in a typical  
425 message are encrypted separately, an adversary can easily substitute individual blocks, possibly  
426 without detection. Furthermore, certain kinds of data patterns in the plaintext, such as repeated  
427 blocks, are apparent in the ciphertext.

428 Cryptographic modes of operation have been defined to alleviate this problem by combining  
429 the basic cryptographic algorithm with variable initialization vectors and some sort of feedback  
430 of the information derived from the cryptographic operation. The NIST Recommendation for  
431 Block Cipher Modes of Operation [\[SP800-38A\]](#) defines modes of operation for the encryption  
432 and decryption of data using block cipher algorithms, such as AES and TDEA. Other modes  
433 **approved** for encryption are specified in other parts of [\[SP800-38\]](#); some of these modes also  
434 produce message authentication codes (see [Section 4.2.3](#)). Guidance on the secure use of each  
435 mode is provided for each mode in addition to the mode specification.

436 Note that one of the modes included in [SP800-38A] is the ECB mode. This mode is not  
437 recommended for general use, as the ciphertext leaks information about plaintext after  
438 relatively small amounts of data are encrypted.

#### 439 **4.2.3 Message Authentication Codes (MACs)**

440 Message Authentication Codes (MACs) can be used to provide source and integrity  
441 authentication. A MAC is a cryptographic checksum on the data that is used in order to provide  
442 assurance that the data has not changed and that the MAC was computed by the expected  
443 entity. Although message (i.e., data) integrity is often provided using non-cryptographic  
444 techniques known as error detection codes, these codes can be altered by an adversary to effect  
445 an action to the adversary's benefit. The use of an **approved** cryptographic mechanism, such  
446 as a MAC, can alleviate this problem. In addition, the MAC can provide a recipient with  
447 assurance that the originator (i.e., the source) of the data is a key holder (i.e., an entity  
448 authorized to have the key). MACs are often used to authenticate the originator to the recipient  
449 when only those two parties share the MAC key.

450 The computation of a MAC requires the use of (1) a secret key that is known only by the party  
451 that generates the MAC and by the intended recipient(s) of the MAC, and (2) the data on which  
452 the MAC is calculated. The result of the MAC computation is often called a MacTag when  
453 transmitted; a MacTag is either a full-length or truncated result from the MAC computation.  
454 Two types of algorithms for computing a MAC have been **approved**: MAC algorithms that are  
455 based on block cipher algorithms, and MAC algorithms that are based on hash functions.

#### 456 **4.2.3.1 MACs Using Block Cipher Algorithms**

457 [\[SP800-38B\]](#) defines a mode to compute a MAC using **approved** block cipher algorithms,  
458 such as AES and TDEA. The key and block size used to compute the MAC depend on the  
459 algorithm used. If the same block cipher is used for both encryption and MAC computation in  
460 two separate cryptographic operations (i.e., using an encryption mode from [\[SP800-38A\]](#) and a  
461 MAC computed as specified in [\[SP800-38B\]](#)), then the same key **shall not** be used for both the

462 MAC and encryption operations. Note that some other modes of operation specified in [\[SP800-](#)  
463 [38\]](#) perform encryption, integrity authentication and source authentication<sup>4</sup> using a single key.

#### 464 **4.2.3.2 MACs Using Hash Functions**

465 [\[FIPS198\]](#) specifies the computation of a MAC using an **approved** hash function. The  
466 algorithm requires a single pass through the entire data. A variety of key sizes are allowed for  
467 HMAC, which is the MAC algorithm specified in [\[FIPS198\]](#); the choice of key size depends  
468 on the amount of security to be provided to the data and the hash function used. See [\[SP800-](#)  
469 [107\]](#) for further discussions about HMAC, and [Section 5.6](#) of this Recommendation (i.e., SP  
470 800-57, Part 1) for further discussion.

#### 471 **4.2.4 Digital Signature Algorithms**

472 Digital signatures are used to provide source authentication, integrity authentication and  
473 support non-repudiation. Digital signatures are used in conjunction with hash functions and are  
474 computed on data of any length (up to a limit that is determined by the hash function).  
475 [\[FIPS186\]](#) specifies algorithms that are **approved** for the computation of digital signatures<sup>5</sup>. It  
476 defines the Digital Signature Algorithm (DSA) and adopts the RSA algorithm, as specified in  
477 [\[ANSX9.31\]](#) and [\[PKCS#1\]](#) (version 1.5 and higher), and the ECDSA algorithm, as specified  
478 in [\[ANSX9.62\]](#).

479 [\[FIPS186\]](#) also specifies several **approved** key sizes for each of these algorithms, and includes  
480 methods for generating the algorithm's key pairs and any other parameters needed for digital  
481 signature generation and verification. Note that older systems (legacy systems) used smaller  
482 key sizes than those currently provided in [\[FIPS186\]](#). Digital signature generation **shall** be  
483 performed using keys that meet or exceed the key sizes specified in [\[FIPS186\]](#) and using key  
484 pairs that are generated in accordance with [\[FIPS186\]](#). Smaller key sizes **shall only** be used to  
485 verify signatures that were generated using those smaller keys. See [\[SP800-131A\]](#).

#### 486 **4.2.5 Key Establishment Schemes**

487 Automated key-establishment schemes are used to set up keys to be used between  
488 communicating entities. Two types of automated key-establishment schemes are defined: key  
489 transport and key agreement. **Approved** key-establishment schemes are provided in [\[SP800-](#)  
490 [56A\]](#) and [\[SP800-56B\]](#).

491 Key transport is the distribution of a key (and other keying material) from one entity (the  
492 sender) to another entity (the receiver). The keying material is encrypted by the sending entity  
493 and decrypted by the receiving entity(ies). If a symmetric algorithm (e.g., AES) is used to  
494 transport a key, the algorithm is used to wrap (i.e., encrypt) the keying material to be  
495 distributed; the sending and receiving entities need to know the symmetric key-wrapping key  
496 (i.e., the key-encrypting key). See [Section 4.2.5.4](#) for further discussion on key encryption and  
497 key wrapping.

---

<sup>4</sup> See the caveat regarding source authentication in [Section 4.2.3](#) above.

<sup>5</sup> Two general types of digital signature methods are discussed in literature: digital signatures with appendix, and digital signatures with message recovery. [\[FIPS186\]](#) specifies algorithms for digital signatures with appendix, and is the digital signature method that is discussed in this Recommendation.

498 If a public-key algorithm is used for key transport, , one key of a key pair is used to encrypt the  
 499 key to be established, and the other key is used for decryption. In this case, the sending entity  
 500 encrypts the keying material using the receiving entity's public key, and the receiving entity  
 501 decrypts the received keying material using the associated private key.

502 Key agreement is the participation by both entities in the creation of shared keying material.  
 503 This may be accomplished using either asymmetric (public-key) or symmetric-key techniques.  
 504 If an asymmetric algorithm is used, each entity has either a static key pair or an ephemeral key  
 505 pair or both. If a symmetric-key algorithm is used, each entity shares the same symmetric key-  
 506 wrapping key.

#### 507 **4.2.5.1 Discrete Log Key Agreement Schemes**

508 [\[SP800-56A\]](#) specifies key-establishment schemes that use discrete-logarithm-based public-  
 509 key algorithms. These schemes are specified using either finite-field math (the form of math  
 510 that most of us use) or elliptic curve math.

511 With the key-establishment schemes specified in [\[SP800-56A\]](#), a party may own and use an  
 512 ephemeral key, a static key, or both an ephemeral and a static key in a single key-agreement  
 513 transaction. The ephemeral key is used to provide a new secret for each key-establishment  
 514 transaction, while the static key (if used in a PKI with public-key certificates) provides for the  
 515 authentication of the owner.

516 [\[SP800-56A\]](#) also provides a key-confirmation method for most of its schemes to obtain  
 517 assurance that each party has agreed upon the same keying material (see [Section 4.2.5.5](#) for a  
 518 discussion of key confirmation).

#### 519 **4.2.5.2 Key Establishment Using Integer-Factorization Schemes**

520 [\[SP800-56B\]](#) provides key-establishment schemes that use integer-factorization-based public-  
 521 key algorithms (e.g., RSA). Two of the families of schemes specified in [\[SP800-56B\]](#) provide  
 522 for key agreement, and the other two families provide for key transport. Each scheme family  
 523 has a basic scheme and one or more schemes that provide key confirmation.

524 In these schemes, one party always owns and uses a key pair, and the other party may or may  
 525 not use a key pair, depending on the scheme. Only static keys are used in the [\[SP800-56B\]](#)  
 526 schemes; ephemeral keys are not used.

#### 527 **4.2.5.3 Security Properties of the Key-Establishment Schemes**

528 Cryptographic protocol designers need to understand the security properties of the schemes in  
 529 order to assure that the desired capabilities are available to the user. In general, schemes where  
 530 each party uses both an ephemeral and a static key provide more security properties than  
 531 schemes using fewer keys. However, it may not be practical for both parties to use both static  
 532 and ephemeral keys in certain applications, and the use of ephemeral keys is not specified for  
 533 all algorithms (see [\[SP800-56B\]](#)). For example, in email applications, it is desirable to send  
 534 messages to other parties who are not on-line. In this case, the receiver cannot be expected to  
 535 provide an ephemeral key to establish the message-encrypting key during a [\[SP800-56A\]](#) key-  
 536 agreement scheme.

537 Both [\[SP80056A\]](#) and [\[SP800-56B\]](#) include discussions of the security properties of each of its  
 538 schemes.

#### 539 **4.2.5.4 Key Encryption and Key Wrapping**

540 Key encryption provides confidentiality protection for a key by encrypting that key using a  
 541 key-encrypting key; decryption reverses the process using the same key. Key wrapping  
 542 provides both confidentiality and integrity protection for a key using a key-wrapping key to  
 543 both encrypt and integrity protect the key to be protected; key unwrapping decrypts the  
 544 ciphertext key and verifies its integrity. Although the key-protection services are slightly  
 545 different and use different methods, the keys are generated in the same manner. In this  
 546 Recommendation and elsewhere, the terms<sup>6</sup> are often used interchangeably.

547 Both processes use a symmetric algorithm, such as AES. Several methods for key wrapping  
 548 have been specified or referenced in [\[SP800-38F\]](#).

#### 549 **4.2.5.5 Key Confirmation**

550 Key confirmation is used by two parties in a key-establishment process to provide assurance  
 551 that common keying material and/or a shared secret<sup>7</sup> has been established. The assurance may  
 552 be provided to only one party (unilateral) or it may be provided to both parties (bilateral). The  
 553 assurance may be provided as part of the key-establishment scheme, or it may be provided by  
 554 some action that takes place outside of the scheme. For example, after a key is established, two  
 555 parties may provide assurance (i.e., a confirmation) to one another that they possess the same  
 556 key by demonstrating their ability to encrypt and decrypt data intended for each other.

557 [\[SP800-56A\]](#) provides for unilateral key confirmation for schemes where one party has a static  
 558 key-establishment key, and bilateral key confirmation for schemes where both parties have  
 559 static key-establishment keys. A total of ten key-confirmation schemes are provided, seven of  
 560 which are unilateral, and three of which are bilateral.

561 [\[SP800-56B\]](#) provides for unilateral key confirmation from the responder, in the case of a key  
 562 agreement scheme, and from the receiver, in the case of a key-transport scheme. Initiator and  
 563 bilateral key confirmation are also provided for one family of key-agreement schemes.

#### 564 **4.2.6 Key Establishment Protocols**

565 Key establishment protocols use key-establishment schemes in order to specify the processing  
 566 necessary to establish a key. However, key-establishment protocols also specify message flow  
 567 and format. Key-establishment protocols need to be carefully designed to not give secret  
 568 information to a potential attacker. For example, a protocol that indicates abnormal conditions,  
 569 such as an integrity error, may permit an attacker to confirm or reject an assumption regarding  
 570 secret data. Alternatively, if the time or power required to perform certain computations are  
 571 based upon the value of the secret or private key in use, then an attacker may be able to deduce  
 572 the key from observed fluctuations.

573 Therefore, it is best to design key-establishment protocols so that:

- 574 1. The protocols do not provide for an early exit from the protocol upon detection of a  
 575 single error,

---

<sup>6</sup> I.e., key-encrypting key and key-wrapping key, encrypt and wrap, and decrypt and unwrap.

<sup>7</sup> An intermediate value computed during a key-agreement scheme.

- 576 2. The protocols trigger an alarm after a certain reasonable number of detected error  
577 conditions, and
- 578 3. The key-dependent computations are obscured from the observer in order to prevent or  
579 minimize the detection of key-dependent characteristics.

#### 580 **4.2.7 Random Bit Generation**

581 Random bit generators (RBGs) (also called random number generators (RNGs)) are required  
582 for the generation of keying material (e.g., keys and IVs). RBGs generate sequences of random  
583 bits (e.g., 010011); technically, RNGs translate those bits into numbers (e.g., 010011 is  
584 translated into the number 19). However, the use of the term “random number generator”  
585 (RNG) is commonly used to refer to both concepts

586 Two classes of RBGs are defined: deterministic and non-deterministic. Deterministic Random  
587 Bit Generators (DRBGs), sometimes called deterministic random number generators or  
588 pseudorandom number generators, use cryptographic algorithms and the associated keying  
589 material to generate pseudorandom bits from an initial value, called a seed, that provides  
590 entropy (i.e., randomness) to the process. Depending on the implemented DRBG design or the  
591 environment, additional entropy never be introduced again, although such additional entropy is  
592 recommended. [\[SP800-90A\]](#) specifies DRBG algorithms that may be used to generate random  
593 bits for cryptographic applications (e.g., key or IV generation).

594 Non-deterministic Random Bit Generators (NRBGs), sometimes called true RNGs, use some  
595 unpredictable physical source that is outside human control to introduce new entropy for every  
596 bit output by the NRBG. The unpredictable source is commonly known as an entropy source.  
597 [\[SP800-90B\]](#) provides guidance on the implementation and testing of entropy sources.

598 [\[SP800-90C\]](#) has been developed to provide guidance on the construction of DRBGs and  
599 NRBGs from the algorithms in [\[SP800-90A\]](#) and entropy sources that comply with [\[SP800-90B\]](#).  
600

## 601 **5 GENERAL KEY MANAGEMENT GUIDANCE**

602 This section classifies the different types of keys and other cryptographic information  
603 according to their uses; discusses cryptoperiods and recommends appropriate cryptoperiods for  
604 each key type; provides recommendations and requirements for other keying material;  
605 introduces assurance of domain-parameter validity, public-key validity, and private-key  
606 possession; discusses the implications of the compromise of keying material; and provides  
607 guidance on the selection, implementation, and replacement of cryptographic algorithms and  
608 key sizes according to their security strengths.

### 609 **5.1 Key Types and Other Information**

610 There are several different types of cryptographic keys, each used for a different purpose. In  
611 addition, there is other information that is specifically related to cryptographic algorithms and  
612 keys.

#### 613 **5.1.1 Cryptographic Keys**

614 Several different types of keys are defined. The keys are identified according to their  
615 classification as public, private or symmetric keys, and as to their use. For public and private

616 key-agreement keys, their status as static or ephemeral keys is also specified. See [Table 5 in](#)  
 617 [Section 6.1.1](#) for the required protections for each type of information.

- 618 1. *Private signature key*: Private signature keys are the private keys of asymmetric  
 619 (public) key pairs that are used by public-key algorithms to generate digital signatures  
 620 with possible long-term implications. When properly handled, private signature keys  
 621 can be used to provide source authentication, integrity authentication and support the  
 622 non-repudiation of messages, documents or stored data.
- 623 2. *Public signature-verification key*: A public signature-verification key is the public key  
 624 of an asymmetric (public) key pair that is used by a public-key algorithm to verify  
 625 digital signatures that are intended to provide source authentication, integrity  
 626 authentication and support the non-repudiation of messages, documents or stored data.
- 627 3. *Symmetric authentication key*: Symmetric authentication keys are used with symmetric-  
 628 key algorithms to provide source authentication and assurance of the integrity of  
 629 communication sessions, messages, documents or stored data (i.e., integrity  
 630 authentication).
- 631 4. *Private authentication key*: A private authentication key is the private key of an  
 632 asymmetric (public) key pair that is used with a public-key algorithm to provide  
 633 assurance of the identity of an originating entity (i.e., the source) when establishing an  
 634 authenticated communication session<sup>8</sup>.
- 635 5. *Public authentication key*: A public authentication key is the public key of an  
 636 asymmetric (public) key pair that is used with a public-key algorithm to provide  
 637 assurance of the identity of an originating entity (i.e., the source) when establishing an  
 638 authenticated communication session<sup>9</sup>.
- 639 6. *Symmetric data-encryption key*: These keys are used with symmetric-key algorithms to  
 640 apply confidentiality protection to information (i.e., to encrypt the information). The  
 641 same key is also used to remove the confidentiality protection (i.e., to decrypt the  
 642 information).
- 643 7. *Symmetric key-wrapping key*: Symmetric key-wrapping keys (also called key-  
 644 encrypting keys) are used to encrypt other keys using symmetric-key algorithms. The  
 645 key-wrapping key used to encrypt a key is also used to reverse the encryption operation  
 646 (i.e., to decrypt the encrypted key). Depending on the algorithm with which the key is  
 647 used, the key may also be used to provide integrity protection.
- 648 8. *Symmetric random number generation keys*: These keys are used to generate random  
 649 numbers or random bits.
- 650 9. *Symmetric master key*: A symmetric master key is used to derive other symmetric keys  
 651 (e.g., data-encryption keys, key-wrapping keys, or source authentication keys) using  
 652 symmetric cryptographic methods. The master key is also known as a key-derivation  
 653 key.

---

<sup>8</sup> While integrity protection is also provided, it is not the primary intention of this key.

<sup>9</sup> While integrity protection is also provided, it is not the primary intention of this key.

- 654 10. *Private key-transport key*: Private key-transport keys are the private keys of asymmetric  
655 (public) key pairs that are used to decrypt keys that have been encrypted with the  
656 corresponding public key using a public-key algorithm. Key-transport keys are usually  
657 used to establish keys (e.g., key-wrapping keys, data-encryption keys or MAC keys)  
658 and, optionally, other keying material (e.g., Initialization Vectors).
- 659 11. *Public key-transport key*: Public key-transport keys are the public keys of asymmetric  
660 (public) key pairs that are used to encrypt keys using a public-key algorithm. These  
661 keys are used to establish keys (e.g., key-wrapping keys, data-encryption keys or MAC  
662 keys) and, optionally, other keying material (e.g., Initialization Vectors). The encrypted  
663 form of the established key might be stored for later decryption using the private key-  
664 transport key.
- 665 12. *Symmetric key-agreement key*: These symmetric keys are used to establish keys (e.g.,  
666 key-wrapping keys, data-encryption keys, or MAC keys) and, optionally, other keying  
667 material (e.g., Initialization Vectors) using a symmetric key-agreement algorithm.
- 668 13. *Private static key-agreement key*: Private static key-agreement keys are the long-term  
669 private keys of asymmetric (public) key pairs that are used to establish keys (e.g., key-  
670 wrapping keys, data-encryption keys, or MAC keys) and, optionally, other keying  
671 material (e.g., Initialization Vectors).
- 672 14. *Public static key-agreement key*: Public static key-agreement keys are the long-term  
673 public keys of asymmetric (public) key pairs that are used to establish keys (e.g., key-  
674 wrapping keys, data-encryption keys, or MAC keys) and, optionally, other keying  
675 material (e.g., Initialization Vectors).
- 676 15. *Private ephemeral key-agreement key*: Private ephemeral key-agreement keys are the  
677 short-term private keys of asymmetric (public) key pairs that are used only once<sup>10</sup> to  
678 establish one or more keys (e.g., key-wrapping keys, data-encryption keys, or MAC  
679 keys) and, optionally, other keying material (e.g., Initialization Vectors).
- 680 16. *Public ephemeral key-agreement key*: Public ephemeral key-agreement keys are the  
681 short-term public keys of asymmetric key pairs that are used in a single key-  
682 establishment transaction<sup>11</sup> to establish one or more keys (e.g., key-wrapping keys,  
683 data-encryption keys, or MAC keys) and, optionally, other keying material (e.g.,  
684 Initialization Vectors).
- 685 17. *Symmetric authorization key*: Symmetric authorization keys are used to provide  
686 privileges to an entity using a symmetric cryptographic method. The authorization key  
687 is known by the entity responsible for monitoring and granting access privileges for  
688 authorized entities and by the entity seeking access to resources.
- 689 18. *Private authorization key*: A private authorization key is the private key of an  
690 asymmetric (public) key pair that is used to provide privileges to an entity.

---

<sup>10</sup> In some cases ephemeral keys are used more than once, though within a single “session”. For example, when Diffie-Hellman is used in S/MIME CMS, the sender may generate one ephemeral key pair per message, and combine the private key separately with each recipient’s public key.

<sup>11</sup> The public ephemeral key-agreement key of a sender may be retained by the receiver for later use in decrypting a stored (encrypted) message for which the ephemeral key pair was generated.

691 19. *Public authorization key*: A public authorization key is the public key of an asymmetric  
 692 (public) key pair that is used to verify privileges for an entity that knows the associated  
 693 private authorization key.

### 694 5.1.2 Other Cryptographic or Related Information

695 Other information used in conjunction with cryptographic algorithms and keys also needs to be  
 696 protected. See [Table 6 in Section 6.1.2](#) for the required protections for each type of  
 697 information.

- 698 1. *Domain Parameters*: Domain parameters are used in conjunction with some public-key  
 699 algorithms to generate key pairs, to create digital signatures or to establish keying material.
- 700 2. *Initialization Vectors*: Initialization vectors (IVs) are used by several modes of operation  
 701 for encryption and decryption (see [Section 4.2.2.3](#)) and for the computation of MACs using  
 702 block cipher algorithms (see [Section 4.2.3.1](#))
- 703 3. *Shared Secrets*: Shared secrets are generated during a key-agreement process as defined in  
 704 [\[SP800-56A\]](#) and [\[SP800-56B\]](#). Shared secrets **shall** be protected and handled in the same  
 705 manner as cryptographic keys. If a FIPS 140-validated cryptographic module is being used,  
 706 then the protection of the shared secrets is provided by the cryptographic module.
- 707 4. *RBG seeds*: RBG seeds are used in the generation of *deterministic random* bits (e.g., used  
 708 to generate keying material that must remain secret or private).
- 709 5. *Other public information*: Public information (e.g., a nonce) is often used in the key-  
 710 establishment process.
- 711 6. *Other secret information*: Secret information may be included in the seeding of an RBG or  
 712 in the establishment of keying material.
- 713 7. *Intermediate Results*: The intermediate results of cryptographic operations using secret  
 714 information must be protected. Intermediate results **shall not** be available for purposes  
 715 other than as intended.
- 716 8. *Key-control information*: Information related to the keying material (e.g., the identifier,  
 717 purpose, or a counter) must be protected to ensure that the associated keying material can  
 718 be correctly used. The key-control information is included in the metadata associated with  
 719 the key (see [Section 6.2.3.1](#)).
- 720 9. *Random numbers* (or bits): The random numbers created by a random bit generator **should**  
 721 be protected when retained. When used directly as keying material or in its generation, the  
 722 random bits **shall** be protected as discussed in [Section 6](#).
- 723 10. *Passwords*: A password is used to acquire access to privileges and can be used as a  
 724 credential in a source authentication mechanism. A password can also be used to derive  
 725 cryptographic keys that are used to protect and access data in storage, as specified in  
 726 [\[SP800-132\]](#).
- 727 11. *Audit information*: Audit information contains a record of key-management events.

## 728 5.2 Key Usage

729 In general, a single key **shall** be used for only one purpose (e.g., encryption, integrity  
730 authentication, key wrapping, random bit generation, or digital signatures). There are several  
731 reasons for this:

- 732 1. The use of the same key for two different cryptographic processes may weaken the  
733 security provided by one or both of the processes.
- 734 2. Limiting the use of a key limits the damage that could be done if the key is  
735 compromised.
- 736 3. Some uses of keys interfere with each other. For example, consider a key pair used for  
737 both key transport and digital signatures. In this case, the private key is used as both a  
738 private key-transport key to decrypt the encrypted keys and as a private signature key to  
739 apply digital signatures. It may be necessary to retain the private key-transport key  
740 beyond the cryptoperiod of the corresponding public key-transport key in order to  
741 decrypt the encrypted keys needed to access encrypted data. On the other hand, the  
742 private signature key **shall** be destroyed at the expiration of its cryptoperiod to prevent  
743 its compromise (see [Section 5.3.6](#)). In this example, the longevity requirements for the  
744 private key-transport key and the private digital-signature key contradict each other.

745 This principle does not preclude using a single key in cases where the same process can  
746 provide multiple services. This is the case, for example, when a digital signature provides  
747 integrity authentication and source authentication using a single digital signature, or when a  
748 single symmetric key can be used to encrypt and authenticate data in a single cryptographic  
749 operation (e.g., using an authenticated-encryption operation, as opposed to separate encryption  
750 and authentication operations). Also, refer to [Section 3.7](#).

751 This Recommendation permits the use of a private key-transport or key-agreement key to  
752 generate a digital signature for the following special case:

753 When requesting the (initial) certificate for a static key-establishment key, the  
754 corresponding private key may be used to sign the certificate request. Also refer to [Section](#)  
755 [8.1.5.1.1.2](#).

## 756 5.3 Cryptoperiods

757 A cryptoperiod is the time span during which a specific key is authorized for use by legitimate  
758 entities, or the keys for a given system will remain in effect. A suitably defined cryptoperiod:

- 759 1. Limits the amount of information protected by a given key that is available for  
760 cryptanalysis,
- 761 2. Limits the amount of exposure if a single key is compromised,
- 762 3. Limits the use of a particular algorithm to its estimated effective lifetime,
- 763 4. Limits the time available for attempts to penetrate physical, procedural, and logical  
764 access mechanisms that protect a key from unauthorized disclosure,
- 765 5. Limits the period within which information may be compromised by inadvertent  
766 disclosure of keying material to unauthorized entities, and

767 6. Limits the time available for computationally intensive cryptanalytic attacks (in  
768 applications where long-term key protection is not required).

769 Sometimes cryptoperiods are defined by an arbitrary time period or maximum amount of data  
770 protected by the key. However, trade-offs associated with the determination of cryptoperiods  
771 involve the risk and consequences of exposure, which should be carefully considered when  
772 selecting the cryptoperiod (see [Section 5.6.4](#)).

### 773 **5.3.1 Risk Factors Affecting Cryptoperiods**

774 Among the factors affecting the length of a cryptoperiod are:

- 775 1. The strength of the cryptographic mechanisms (e.g., the algorithm, key length, block  
776 size, and mode of operation),
- 777 2. The embodiment of the mechanisms (e.g., a [\[FIPS140\]](#) Level 4 implementation or a  
778 software implementation on a personal computer),
- 779 3. The operating environment (e.g., a secure limited-access facility, open office  
780 environment, or publicly accessible terminal),
- 781 4. The volume of information flow or the number of transactions,
- 782 5. The security life of the data,
- 783 6. The security function (e.g., data encryption, digital signature, key derivation, or key  
784 protection),
- 785 7. The re-keying method (e.g., keyboard entry, re-keying using a key loading device  
786 where humans have no direct access to key information, or remote re-keying within a  
787 PKI),
- 788 8. The key update or key-derivation process,
- 789 9. The number of nodes in a network that share a common key,
- 790 10. The number of copies of a key and the distribution of those copies,
- 791 11. Personnel turnover (e.g., CA system personnel), and
- 792 12. The threat to the information from adversaries (e.g., whom the information is protected  
793 from, and what are their perceived technical capabilities and financial resources to  
794 mount an attack).
- 795 13. The threat to the information from new and disruptive technologies (e.g., quantum  
796 computers).

797 In general, short cryptoperiods enhance security. For example, some cryptographic algorithms  
798 might be less vulnerable to cryptanalysis if the adversary has only a limited amount of  
799 information encrypted under a single key. On the other hand, where manual key-distribution  
800 methods are subject to human error and frailty, more frequent key changes might actually  
801 increase the risk of key exposure. In these cases, especially when very strong cryptography is  
802 employed, it may be more prudent to have fewer, well-controlled manual key distributions,  
803 rather than more frequent, poorly controlled manual key distributions.

804 In general, where strong cryptography is employed, physical, procedural, and logical access-  
805 protection considerations often have more impact on cryptoperiod selection than do algorithm

806 and key-size factors. In the case of **approved** algorithms, modes of operation, and key sizes,  
 807 adversaries may be able to access keys through the penetration or subversion of a system with  
 808 less expenditure of time and resources than would be required to mount and execute a  
 809 cryptographic attack.

### 810 **5.3.2 Consequence Factors Affecting Cryptoperiods**

811 The consequences of exposure are measured by the sensitivity of the information, the criticality  
 812 of the processes protected by the cryptography, and the cost of recovery from the compromise  
 813 of the information or processes. Sensitivity refers to the lifespan of the information being  
 814 protected (e.g., 10 minutes, 10 days or 10 years) and the potential consequences of a loss of  
 815 protection for that information (e.g., the disclosure of the information to unauthorized entities).  
 816 In general, as the sensitivity of the information or the criticality of the processes protected by  
 817 cryptography increase, the length of the associated cryptoperiods **should** decrease in order to  
 818 limit the damage that might result from each compromise. This is subject to the caveat  
 819 regarding the security and integrity of the re-keying, key update or key-derivation process (see  
 820 Sections [8.2.3](#) and [8.2.4](#)). Short cryptoperiods may be counter productive, particularly where  
 821 denial of service is the paramount concern, and there is a significant potential for error in the  
 822 re-keying, key update or key-derivation process.

### 823 **5.3.3 Other Factors Affecting Cryptoperiods**

#### 824 **5.3.3.1 Communications versus Storage**

825 Keys that are used for confidentiality protection of communication exchanges may often have  
 826 shorter cryptoperiods than keys used for the protection of stored data. Cryptoperiods are  
 827 generally made longer for stored data because the overhead of re-encryption associated with  
 828 changing keys may be burdensome.

#### 829 **5.3.3.2 Cost of Key Revocation and Replacement**

830 In some cases, the costs associated with changing keys are painfully high. Examples include  
 831 decryption and subsequent re-encryption of very large databases, decryption and re-encryption  
 832 of distributed databases, and revocation and replacement of a very large number of keys (e.g.,  
 833 where there are very large numbers of geographically and organizationally distributed key  
 834 holders). In such cases, the expense of the security measures necessary to support longer  
 835 cryptoperiods may be justified (e.g., costly and inconvenient physical, procedural, and logical  
 836 access security; and the use of cryptography strong enough to support longer cryptoperiods,  
 837 even where this may result in significant additional processing overhead). In other cases, the  
 838 cryptoperiod may be shorter than would otherwise be necessary; for example, keys may be  
 839 changed frequently in order to limit the period of time that the key management system  
 840 maintains status information.

### 841 **5.3.4 Asymmetric Key Usage Periods and Cryptoperiods**

842 For key pairs, each key of the pair has its own cryptoperiod. One key of the key pair is used to  
 843 apply cryptographic protection (e.g., create a digital signature), and its cryptoperiod can be  
 844 considered as an "originator-usage period." The other key of the key pair is used to process the  
 845 protected information (e.g., verify a digital signature); its cryptoperiod is considered to be the  
 846 "recipient-usage period." The key pair's originator and recipient-usage periods typically begin  
 847 at the same time, but the recipient-usage period may extend beyond the originator-usage  
 848 period. For example:

849       • In the case of digital signature key pairs, the private signature key is used to sign data  
 850 (i.e., apply cryptographic protection), so its cryptoperiod is considered to be an  
 851 originator-usage period. The public signature-verification key is used to verify digital  
 852 signatures (i.e., process already-protected information); its cryptoperiod is considered  
 853 to be a recipient-usage period.

854       For a private signature key that is used to generate digital signatures as a proof-of-  
 855 origin (i.e., for source authentication), the originator-usage period (i.e., the period  
 856 during which the private key may be used to generate signatures) is often shorter than  
 857 the recipient-usage period (i.e., the period during which the signature may be verified).  
 858 In this case, the private key is intended for use for a fixed period of time, after which  
 859 time the key owner **shall** destroy<sup>12</sup> the private key. The public key may be available for  
 860 a longer period of time for verifying signatures.

861       The cryptoperiod of a private source-authentication key that is used to sign challenge  
 862 information is basically the same as the cryptoperiod of the associated public key (i.e.,  
 863 the public source-authentication key). That is, when the private key will not be used to  
 864 sign challenges, the public key is no longer needed. In this case, the originator and  
 865 recipient-usage periods are the same.

866       • For key transport keys, the public key-transport key is used to apply protection (i.e.,  
 867 encrypt), so its cryptoperiod would be considered as an originator-usage period; the  
 868 private key-transport key is used to decrypt, so its cryptoperiod would be considered as  
 869 the recipient-usage period. The originator-usage period (i.e., the period during which  
 870 the public key may be used for encryption) is often shorter than the recipient-usage  
 871 period (i.e., the period during which the encrypted information may be decrypted).

872       • For key-agreement algorithms, the cryptoperiods of the two keys of the key pair are  
 873 usually the same.

874       Where public keys are distributed in public-key certificates, each certificate has a validity  
 875 period, indicated by the *notBefore* and *notAfter* dates in the certificate. Certificates may be  
 876 renewed, i.e., a new certificate containing the same public key may be issued with a new  
 877 validity period. The sum of the validity periods for the original certificate and all renewed  
 878 certificates for the same public key **shall not** exceed the cryptoperiod of the key of the key pair  
 879 used to apply protection (i.e., the key with the originator-usage period).

880       See [Section 5.3.6](#) for guidance regarding specific key types.

### 881   **5.3.5   Symmetric Key Usage Periods and Cryptoperiods**

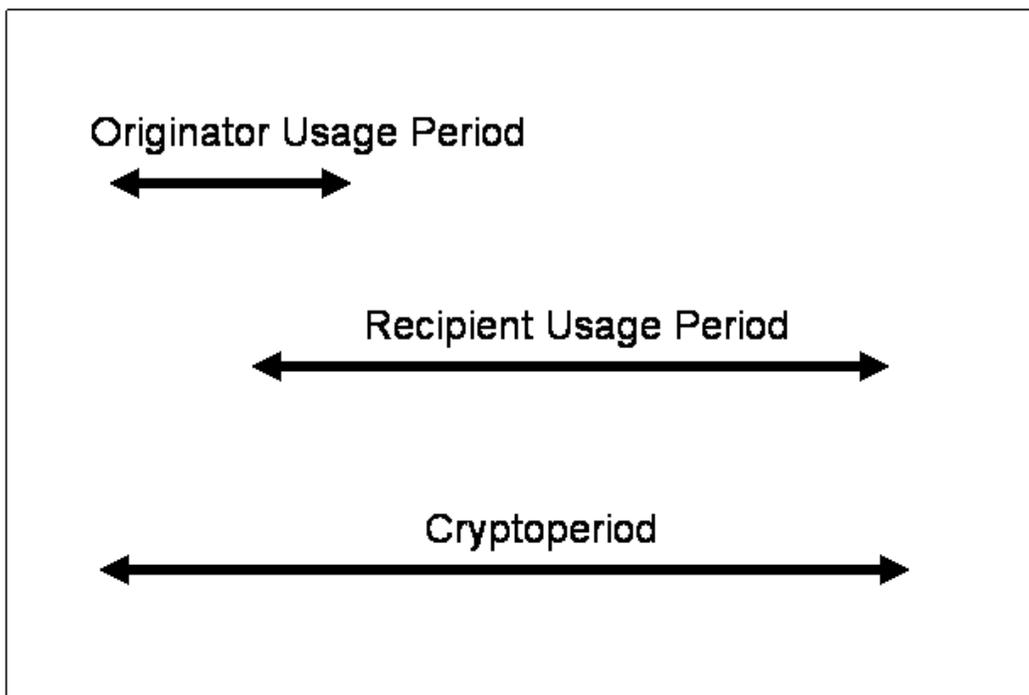
882       For symmetric keys, a single key is used for both applying the protection (e.g., encrypting or  
 883 computing a MAC) and processing the protected information (e.g., decrypting the encrypted  
 884 information or verifying a MAC). The period of time during which cryptographic protection  
 885 may be applied to data is called the *originator-usage period*, and the period of time during

---

<sup>12</sup> A simple deletion of the keying material might not completely obliterate the information. For example, erasing the information might require overwriting that information multiple times with other non-related information, such as random bits, or all zero or one bits. Keys stored in memory for a long time can become “burned in”. This can be mitigated by splitting the key into components that are frequently updated (see [IDiCrescenzo](#)).

886 which the protected information is processed is called the *recipient-usage period*. A symmetric  
 887 key **shall not** be used to provide protection after the end of the originator-usage period. The  
 888 recipient-usage period may extend beyond the originator-usage period (see [Figure 1](#)). This  
 889 permits all information that has been protected by the originator to be processed by the  
 890 recipient before the processing key is deactivated. However, in many cases, the originator and  
 891 recipient-usage periods are the same. The (total) “cryptoperiod” of a symmetric key is the  
 892 period of time from the beginning of the originator-usage period to the end of the recipient-  
 893 usage period, although the originator-usage period has historically been used as the  
 894 cryptoperiod for the key.

895 Note that in some cases, predetermined cryptoperiods may not be adequate for the security life  
 896 of the protected data. If the required security life exceeds the cryptoperiod, then the protection  
 897 will need to be reapplied using a new key.



898

899

**Figure 1: Symmetric key cryptoperiod**

900 Examples of the use of the usage periods include:

901 a. When a symmetric key is used only for securing communications, the period of time  
 902 from the originator’s application of protection to the recipient’s processing may be  
 903 negligible. In this case, the key is authorized for either purpose during the entire  
 904 cryptoperiod, i.e., the originator-usage period and the recipient-usage period are the  
 905 same.

906 b. When a symmetric key is used to protect stored information, the originator-usage  
 907 period (when the originator applies cryptographic protection to stored information) may  
 908 end much earlier than the recipient-usage period (when the stored information is  
 909 processed). In this case, the cryptoperiod begins at the initial time authorized for the  
 910 application of protection with the key, and ends with the latest time authorized for

911 processing using that key. In general, the recipient-usage period for stored information  
 912 will continue beyond the originator-usage period so that the stored information may be  
 913 authenticated or decrypted at a later time.

914 c. When a symmetric key is used to protect stored information, the recipient-usage period  
 915 may start after the beginning of the originator-usage period as shown in [Figure 1](#). For  
 916 example, information may be encrypted before being stored on some storage media. At  
 917 some later time, the key may be distributed in order to decrypt and recover the  
 918 information.

### 919 **5.3.6 Cryptoperiod Recommendations for Specific Key Types**

920 The cryptoperiod required for a given key may be affected by the key type as much as by the  
 921 usage environment and data characteristics described above. Some general cryptoperiod  
 922 recommendations for various key types are suggested below. Note that the cryptoperiods  
 923 suggested are only rough order-of-magnitude guidelines; longer or shorter cryptoperiods may  
 924 be warranted, depending on the application and environment in which the keys will be used.  
 925 However, when assigning a longer cryptoperiod than that suggested below, serious  
 926 consideration should be given to the risks associated with doing so (see [Section 5.3.1](#)). Most of  
 927 the suggested cryptoperiods are on the order of 1-2 years, based on 1) a desire for maximum  
 928 operational efficiency and 2) assumptions regarding the minimum criteria for the usage  
 929 environment (see [\[FIPS140\]](#), [\[SP800-14\]](#), and [\[SP800-37\]](#)). The factors described in Sections  
 930 [5.3.1](#) through [5.3.3](#) **should** be used to determine actual cryptoperiods for specific usage  
 931 environments.

#### 932 1. *Private signature key:*

933 a. Type Considerations: In general, the cryptoperiod of a private signature key may be  
 934 shorter than the cryptoperiod of the corresponding public signature-verification key.  
 935 When the corresponding public key has been certified by a CA, the cryptoperiod ends  
 936 when the *notAfter* date is reached on the last certificate issued for the public key<sup>13</sup>.

937 b. Cryptoperiod: Given the use of **approved** algorithms and key sizes, and an  
 938 expectation that the security of the key-storage and use environment will increase as the  
 939 sensitivity and/or criticality of the processes for which the key provides integrity  
 940 protection increases, a maximum cryptoperiod of about one to three years is  
 941 recommended. The key **shall** be destroyed at the end of its cryptoperiod.

#### 942 2. *Public signature-verification key:*

943 a. Type Considerations: In general, the cryptoperiod of a public signature-verification  
 944 key may be longer than the cryptoperiod of the corresponding private signature key.  
 945 The cryptoperiod is, in effect, the period during which any signature computed using  
 946 the corresponding private signature key needs to be verified. A longer cryptoperiod for  
 947 the public signature-verification key (than the private signature key) poses a relatively  
 948 minimal security concern.

---

<sup>13</sup> Multiple consecutive certificates may be issued for the same public key, presumably with different *notBefore* and *notAfter* validity dates.

949 b. Cryptoperiod: The cryptoperiod may be on the order of several years, though due to  
 950 the long exposure of protection mechanisms to hostile attack, the reliability of the  
 951 signature is reduced with the passage of time. That is, for any given algorithm and key  
 952 size, vulnerability to cryptanalysis is expected to increase with time. Although choosing  
 953 the strongest available algorithm and a large key size can minimize this vulnerability to  
 954 cryptanalysis, the consequences of exposure to attacks on physical, procedural, and  
 955 logical access-control mechanisms for the private key are not affected.

956 Some systems use a cryptographic timestamping function to place an unforgeable  
 957 timestamp on each signed message. Even though the cryptoperiod of the private  
 958 signature key has expired, the corresponding public signature-verification key may be  
 959 used to verify signatures on messages whose timestamps are within the cryptoperiod of  
 960 the private signature key. In this case, one is relying on the cryptographic timestamp  
 961 function to assure that the message was signed within the signature key's originator-  
 962 usage period.

963 3. *Symmetric authentication key:*

964 a. Type Considerations: The cryptoperiod of a symmetric authentication key<sup>14</sup> depends  
 965 on the sensitivity of the type of information it protects and the protection afforded by  
 966 the key. For very sensitive information, the authentication key may need to be unique to  
 967 the protected information. For less sensitive information, suitable cryptoperiods may  
 968 extend beyond a single use of the key. The originator-usage period of a symmetric  
 969 authentication key applies to the use of that key in applying the original cryptographic  
 970 protection for the information (e.g., computing the MAC); new MACs **shall not** be  
 971 computed on information using that key after the end of the originator-usage period.  
 972 However, the key may need to be available to verify the MAC on the protected data  
 973 beyond the originator-usage period (i.e., the recipient-usage period extends beyond the  
 974 originator-usage period). The recipient-usage period is the period during which a MAC  
 975 generated during the originator-usage period needs to be verified. Note that if a MAC  
 976 key is compromised, it may be possible for an adversary to modify the data and then  
 977 recalculate the MAC.

978 b. Cryptoperiod: Given the use of **approved** algorithms and key sizes, and an  
 979 expectation that the security of the key-storage and use environment will increase as the  
 980 sensitivity and/or criticality of the processes for which the key provides integrity  
 981 protection increases, a maximum originator-usage period of up to two years is  
 982 recommended, and a maximum recipient-usage period of three years beyond the end of  
 983 the originator-usage period is recommended.

984 4. *Private authentication key:*

985 a. Type Considerations: A private authentication key<sup>15</sup> may be used multiple times. Its  
 986 corresponding public key could be certified, for example, by a Certification Authority.  
 987 In most cases, the cryptoperiod of the private authentication key is the same as the  
 988 cryptoperiod of the corresponding public key.

---

<sup>14</sup> Used to enable data integrity and source authentication.

<sup>15</sup> Which may be used to enable data integrity and source authentication, as well as non-repudiation.

- 989           b. Cryptoperiod: An appropriate cryptoperiod for a private authentication key would be  
 990 one to two years, depending on its usage environment and the sensitivity/criticality of  
 991 the authenticated information.
- 992       5. *Public authentication key:*
- 993           a. Type Considerations: In most cases, the cryptoperiod of a public authentication key  
 994 is the same as the cryptoperiod of the corresponding private authentication key. The  
 995 cryptoperiod is, in effect, the period during which the identity of the originator of  
 996 information protected by the corresponding private authentication key needs to be  
 997 verified, i.e., the information source needs to be authenticated<sup>16</sup>.
- 998           b. Cryptoperiod: An appropriate cryptoperiod for the public authentication key would  
 999 be one to two years, depending on its usage environment and the sensitivity/criticality  
 1000 of the authenticated information.
- 1001       6. *Symmetric data-encryption key:*
- 1002           a. Type Considerations: A symmetric data-encryption key is used to protect stored data,  
 1003 messages or communications sessions. Based primarily on the consequences of  
 1004 compromise, a data-encryption key that is used to encrypt large volumes of information  
 1005 over a short period of time (e.g., for link encryption) **should** have a relatively short  
 1006 originator-usage period. An encryption key used to encrypt less information over time  
 1007 could have a longer originator-usage period. The originator-usage period of a  
 1008 symmetric data-encryption key applies to the use of that key in applying the original  
 1009 cryptographic protection for information (i.e., encrypting the information) (see [Section](#)  
 1010 [5.3.5](#)).
- 1011           During the originator-usage period, an encryption of the information may be performed  
 1012 using the data-encryption key; the key **shall not** be used for performing an encryption  
 1013 operation on information beyond this period. However, the key may need to be  
 1014 available to decrypt the protected data beyond the originator-usage period (i.e., the  
 1015 recipient-usage period may need to extend beyond the originator-usage period).
- 1016           b. Cryptoperiod: The originator-usage period recommended for the encryption of large  
 1017 volumes of information over a short period of time (e.g., for link encryption) is on the  
 1018 order of a day or a week. An encryption key used to encrypt smaller volumes of  
 1019 information might have an originator-usage period of up to two years. A maximum  
 1020 recipient-usage period of three years beyond the end of the originator-usage period is  
 1021 recommended.
- 1022           In the case of symmetric data-encryption keys that are used to encrypt single messages  
 1023 or single communications sessions, the lifetime of the protected data could be months  
 1024 or years because the encrypted messages may be stored for later reading. Where  
 1025 information is maintained in encrypted form, the symmetric data-encryption keys need  
 1026 to be maintained until that information is re-encrypted under a new key or destroyed.  
 1027 Note that confidence in the confidentiality of the information is reduced with the  
 1028 passage of time.

---

<sup>16</sup> While integrity protection is also provided, it is not the primary intention of this key.

- 1029 7. *Symmetric key-wrapping key:*
- 1030 a. Type Considerations: A symmetric key-wrapping key that is used to wrap (i.e.,  
 1031 encrypt and integrity protect) very large numbers of keys over a short period of time  
 1032 **should** have a relatively short originator-usage period. If a small number of keys are  
 1033 wrapped, the originator-usage period of the key-wrapping key could be longer. The  
 1034 originator-usage period of a symmetric key-wrapping key applies to the use of that key  
 1035 in providing the key-wrapping protection for the keys; a wrapping operation **shall not**  
 1036 be performed using a key-wrapping key whose originator-usage period has expired.  
 1037 However, the key-wrapping key may need to be available to unwrap the protected keys  
 1038 (i.e., decrypt and verify the integrity of the wrapped keys) beyond the originator-usage  
 1039 period (i.e., the recipient-usage period may need to extend beyond the originator-usage  
 1040 period); the recipient-usage period is the period of time during which keys wrapped  
 1041 during the key-wrapping key's originator-usage period may need to be unwrapped.
- 1042 Some symmetric key-wrapping keys are used for only a single message or  
 1043 communications session. In the case of these very short-term key-wrapping keys, an  
 1044 appropriate cryptoperiod (i.e., which includes both the originator and recipient-usage  
 1045 periods) is a single communication session. It is assumed that the wrapped key will not  
 1046 be retained in its wrapped form, so the originator-usage period and recipient-usage  
 1047 period of the key-wrapping key is the same. In other cases, key-wrapping keys may be  
 1048 retained so that the files or messages encrypted by the wrapped keys may be recovered  
 1049 later on. In this case the recipient-usage period may be significantly longer than the  
 1050 originator-usage period of the key-wrapping key, and cryptoperiods lasting for years  
 1051 may be employed.
- 1052 b. Cryptoperiod: The recommended originator-usage period for a symmetric key-  
 1053 wrapping key that is used to wrap very large numbers of keys over a short period of  
 1054 time is on the order of a day or a week. If a relatively small number of keys are to be  
 1055 wrapped under the key-wrapping key, the originator-usage period of the key-wrapping  
 1056 key could be up to two years. In the case of keys used for only a single message or  
 1057 communications session, the cryptoperiod would be limited to a single communication  
 1058 session. Except for the latter, a maximum recipient-usage period of three years beyond  
 1059 the end of the originator-usage period is recommended.
- 1060 8. *Symmetric RBG keys:*
- 1061 a. Type Considerations: Symmetric RBG keys are used in deterministic random bit  
 1062 generation functions. The **approved** RBGs in [\[SP800-90\]](#) control key changes (e.g.,  
 1063 during reseeding). The cryptoperiod consists of only an originator-usage period.
- 1064 b. Cryptoperiod: Assuming the use of **approved** RBGs, the maximum cryptoperiod of  
 1065 symmetric RBG keys is determined by the design of the RBG (see [\[SP800-90\]](#)).
- 1066 9. *Symmetric master key:*
- 1067 a. Type Considerations: A symmetric master key (also called a key-derivation key) may  
 1068 be used multiple times to derive other keys using a (one-way) key-derivation function  
 1069 or method (see [Section 8.2.4](#)). Therefore, the cryptoperiod consists of only an  
 1070 originator-usage period for this key type. A suitable cryptoperiod depends on the nature  
 1071 and use of the keys derived from the master key and on considerations provided earlier

1072 in [Section 5.3](#). The cryptoperiod of a key derived from a master key could be relatively  
 1073 short, e.g., a single use, communication session, or transaction. Alternatively, the  
 1074 master key could be used over a longer period of time to derive (or re-derive) multiple  
 1075 keys for the same or different purposes. The cryptoperiod of the derived keys depends  
 1076 on their use (e.g., as symmetric data-encryption or integrity authentication keys).

1077 b. Cryptoperiod: An appropriate cryptoperiod for the symmetric master key might be  
 1078 one year, depending on its usage environment and the sensitivity/criticality of the  
 1079 information protected by the derived keys and the number of keys derived from the  
 1080 master key.

1081 10. *Private key-transport key:*

1082 a. Type Considerations: A private key-transport key may be used multiple times to  
 1083 decrypt keys. Due to the potential need to decrypt keys some time after they have been  
 1084 encrypted for transport, the cryptoperiod of the private key-transport key may be longer  
 1085 than the cryptoperiod of the associated public key. The cryptoperiod of the private key  
 1086 is the length of time during which any keys encrypted by the corresponding public key-  
 1087 transport key need to be decrypted.

1088 b. Cryptoperiod: Given 1) the use of **approved** algorithms and key sizes, 2) the volume  
 1089 of information that may be protected by keys encrypted under the corresponding public  
 1090 key-transport key, and 3) an expectation that the security of the key-storage and use  
 1091 environment will increase as the sensitivity and/or criticality of the processes for which  
 1092 the key provides protection increases; a maximum cryptoperiod of about two years is  
 1093 recommended for the private key-transport key. In certain applications (e.g., email),  
 1094 where received messages are stored and decrypted at a later time, the cryptoperiod of  
 1095 the private key-transport key may exceed the cryptoperiod of the public key-transport  
 1096 key.

1097 11. *Public key-transport key:*

1098 a. Type Considerations: The cryptoperiod for the public key-transport key is that period  
 1099 of time during which the public key may be used to actually apply the encryption  
 1100 operation to the keys that will be protected. When the public key has been certified by a  
 1101 CA, the cryptoperiod ends when the *notAfter* date is reached on the last certificate  
 1102 issued for the public key.

1103 Public key-transport keys can be publicly known. As indicated in the private key-  
 1104 transport key discussion, due to the potential need to decrypt keys some time after they  
 1105 have been encrypted for transport, the cryptoperiod of the public key-transport key may  
 1106 be shorter than that of the corresponding private key.

1107 b. Cryptoperiod: Based on cryptoperiod assumptions for the corresponding private  
 1108 keys, a recommendation for the maximum cryptoperiod might be about one to two  
 1109 years.

1110 12. *Symmetric key-agreement key:*

1111 a. Type Considerations: A symmetric key-agreement key may be used multiple times.  
 1112 The cryptoperiod of these keys depends on 1) environmental security factors, 2) the  
 1113 nature (e.g., types and formats) and volume of keys that are established, and 3) the

1114 details of the key-agreement algorithms and protocols employed. Note that symmetric  
 1115 key-agreement keys may be used to establish symmetric keys (e.g., symmetric data  
 1116 encryption keys) or other keying material (e.g., IVs).

1117 b. Cryptoperiod: Given an assumption that the cryptography that employs symmetric  
 1118 key-agreement keys 1) employs an **approved** algorithm and key scheme, 2) the  
 1119 cryptographic device meets [\[FIPS140\]](#) requirements, and 3) the risk levels are  
 1120 established in conformance to [\[FIPS199\]](#), an appropriate cryptoperiod for the key  
 1121 would be one to two years. In certain applications (e.g., email), where received  
 1122 messages are stored and decrypted at a later time, the recipient-usage period of the key  
 1123 may exceed the originator-usage period.

1124 13. *Private static key-agreement key:*

1125 a. Type Considerations: A private static (i.e., long-term) key-agreement key may be  
 1126 used multiple times. When the corresponding public key has been certified by a CA, the  
 1127 cryptoperiod ends when the *notAfter* date is reached on the last certificate issued for the  
 1128 public key.

1129 As in the case of symmetric key-agreement keys, the cryptoperiod of these keys  
 1130 depends on 1) environmental security factors, 2) the nature (e.g., types and formats) and  
 1131 volume of keys that are established, and 3) the details of the key-agreement algorithms  
 1132 and protocols employed. Note that private static key-agreement keys may be used to  
 1133 establish symmetric keys (e.g., key-wrapping keys) or other secret keying material.

1134 b. Cryptoperiod: Given an assumption that the cryptography that employs private static  
 1135 key-agreement keys 1) employs an **approved** algorithm and key scheme, 2) the  
 1136 cryptographic device meets [\[FIPS140\]](#) requirements, and 3) the risk levels are  
 1137 established in conformance to [\[FIPS199\]](#), an appropriate cryptoperiod for the key  
 1138 would be one to two years. In certain applications (e.g., email), where received  
 1139 messages are stored and decrypted at a later time, the cryptoperiod of the private static  
 1140 key-agreement key may exceed the cryptoperiod of the corresponding public static key-  
 1141 agreement key.

1142 14. *Public static key-agreement key:*

1143 a. Type Considerations: The cryptoperiod for a public static (i.e., long-term) key-  
 1144 agreement key is usually the same as the cryptoperiod of the corresponding private  
 1145 static key-agreement key.

1146 b. Cryptoperiod: The cryptoperiod of the public static key-agreement key may be one to  
 1147 two years.

1148 15. *Private ephemeral key-agreement key:*

1149 a. Type Considerations: Private ephemeral (i.e., short-term) key-agreement keys are the  
 1150 private key elements of asymmetric key pairs that are used in a single transaction to  
 1151 establish one or more keys. Private ephemeral key-agreement keys may be used to  
 1152 establish symmetric keys (e.g., key-wrapping keys) or other secret keying material.

1153 b. Cryptoperiod: Private ephemeral key-agreement keys are used for a single key-  
 1154 agreement transaction. However, a private ephemeral key may be used multiple times  
 1155 to establish the same symmetric key with multiple parties during the same transaction

1156 (broadcast). The cryptoperiod of a private ephemeral key-agreement key is the duration  
1157 of a single key-agreement transaction.

1158 16. *Public ephemeral key-agreement key:*

1159 a. Type Considerations: Public ephemeral (i.e., short-term) key-agreement keys are the  
1160 public key elements of asymmetric key pairs that are used only once to establish one or  
1161 more keys.

1162 b. Cryptoperiod: Public ephemeral key-agreement keys are used for a single key-  
1163 agreement transaction. The cryptoperiod of the public ephemeral key-agreement key  
1164 ends immediately after it is used to generate the shared secret. Note that in some cases,  
1165 the cryptoperiod of the public ephemeral key-agreement key may be different for the  
1166 participants in the key-agreement transaction. For example, consider an encrypted  
1167 email application in which the email sender generates an ephemeral key-agreement key  
1168 pair, and then uses the key pair to generate an encryption key that is used to encrypt the  
1169 contents of the email. For the sender, the cryptoperiod of the public key ends when the  
1170 shared secret is generated and the *encryption* key is derived. However, for the  
1171 encrypted email receiver, the cryptoperiod of the ephemeral public key does not end  
1172 until the shared secret is generated and the *decryption* key is determined; if the email is  
1173 not processed immediately upon receipt (e.g., it is decrypted a week later than the email  
1174 was sent), then the cryptoperiod of the ephemeral public key does not end (from the  
1175 perspective of the receiver) until the shared secret is generated that uses that public key.

1176 17. *Symmetric authorization key:*

1177 a. Type Considerations: A symmetric authorization key may be used for an extended  
1178 period of time, depending on the resources that are protected and the role of the entity  
1179 authorized for access. For this key type, the originator-usage period and the recipient-  
1180 usage period are the same. Primary considerations in establishing the cryptoperiod for  
1181 symmetric authorization keys include the robustness of the key, the adequacy of the  
1182 cryptographic method, and the adequacy of key-protection mechanisms and procedures.

1183 b. Cryptoperiod: Given the use of **approved** algorithms and key sizes, and an  
1184 expectation that the security of the key-storage and use environment will increase as the  
1185 sensitivity and criticality of the authorization processes increases, it is recommended  
1186 that cryptoperiods be no more than two years.

1187 18. *Private authorization key:*

1188 a. Type Considerations: A private authorization key may be used for an extended  
1189 period of time, depending on the resources that are protected and the role of the entity  
1190 authorized for access. Primary considerations in establishing the cryptoperiod for  
1191 private authorization keys include the robustness of the key, the adequacy of the  
1192 cryptographic method, and the adequacy of key-protection mechanisms and procedures.  
1193 The cryptoperiod of the private authorization key and its corresponding public key  
1194 **shall** be the same.

1195 b. Cryptoperiod: Given the use of **approved** algorithms and key sizes, and an  
1196 expectation that the security of the key-storage and use environment will increase as the  
1197 sensitivity and criticality of the authorization processes increases, it is recommended  
1198 that cryptoperiods for private authorization keys be no more than two years.

- 1199 19. *Public authorization key*:
- 1200 a. Type Considerations: A public authorization key is the public element of an
- 1201 asymmetric key pair used to verify privileges for an entity that possesses the
- 1202 corresponding private key.
- 1203 b. Cryptoperiod: The cryptoperiod of the public authorization key **shall** be the same as
- 1204 the private authorization key: no more than two years.
- 1205 [Table 1](#) below is a summary of the cryptoperiods that are suggested for each key type. Longer
- 1206 or shorter cryptoperiods may be warranted, depending on the application and environment in
- 1207 which the keys will be used. However, when assigning a longer cryptoperiod than that
- 1208 suggested below, serious consideration **should** be given to the risks associated with doing so
- 1209 (see [Section 5.3.1](#)).

1210 **Table 1: Suggested cryptoperiods for key types<sup>17</sup>**

Key Type	Cryptoperiod	
	Originator-Usage Period (OUP)	Recipient-Usage Period
1. Private Signature Key	1-3 years	–
2. Public Signature-Verification Key	Several years (depends on key size)	
3. Symmetric Authentication Key	≤ 2 years	≤ OUP + 3 years
4. Private Authentication Key	1-2 years	
5. Public Authentication Key	1-2 years	
6. Symmetric Data Encryption Keys	≤ 2 years	≤ OUP + 3 years
7. Symmetric Key Wrapping Key	≤ 2 years	≤ OUP + 3 years
8. Symmetric RBG Keys	See <a href="#">[SP800-90]</a>	–
9. Symmetric Master Key	About 1 year	–
10. Private Key Transport Key	≤ 2 years <sup>18</sup>	
11. Public Key Transport Key	1-2 years	
12. Symmetric Key Agreement Key	1-2 years <sup>19</sup>	
13. Private Static Key Agreement Key	1-2 years <sup>20</sup>	

<sup>17</sup> In some cases, risk factors affect the cryptoperiod selection (see [Section 5.3.1](#)).

<sup>18</sup> In certain email applications where received messages are stored and decrypted at a later time, the cryptoperiod of the private key-transport key may exceed the cryptoperiod of the public key-transport key.

<sup>19</sup> In certain email applications where received messages are stored and decrypted at a later time, the key's recipient-usage period key may exceed the originator-usage period.

Key Type	Cryptoperiod	
	Originator-Usage Period (OUP)	Recipient-Usage Period
14. Public Static Key Agreement Key	1-2 years	
15. Private Ephemeral Key Agreement Key	One key-agreement transaction	
16. Public Ephemeral Key Agreement Key	One key-agreement transaction	
17. Symmetric Authorization Key	≤ 2 years	
18. Private Authorization Key	≤ 2 years	
19. Public Authorization Key	≤ 2 years	

1211

1212 **5.3.7 Recommendations for Other Keying Material**

1213 Other keying material does not have well-established cryptoperiods, per se. The following  
 1214 recommendations are offered regarding the disposition of this other keying material:

- 1215 1. Domain parameters remain in effect until changed.
- 1216 2. An IV is associated with the information that it helps to protect, and is needed until the  
 1217 information in its cryptographically protected form is no longer needed.
- 1218 3. Shared secrets generated during the execution of key-agreement schemes **shall** be  
 1219 destroyed as soon as they are no longer needed to derive keying material.
- 1220 4. RBG seeds **shall** be destroyed immediately after use.
- 1221 5. Other public information **should not** be retained longer than needed for cryptographic  
 1222 processing.
- 1223 6. Other secret information **shall not** be retained longer than necessary.
- 1224 7. Intermediate results **shall** be destroyed immediately after use.

1225 **5.4 Assurances**

1226 When cryptographic keys and domain parameters are stored or distributed, they may pass  
 1227 through unprotected environments. In this case, specific assurances are required before the key  
 1228 or domain parameters may be used to perform normal cryptographic operations.

---

<sup>20</sup> In certain email applications whereby received messages are stored and decrypted at a later time, the cryptoperiod of the private static key-agreement key may exceed the cryptoperiod of the public static key-agreement key.

#### 1229 **5.4.1 Assurance of Integrity (Integrity Protection)**

1230 Assurance of integrity **shall** be obtained prior to using all keying material.

1231 At a minimum, assurance of integrity **shall** be obtained by verifying that the keying material  
 1232 has the appropriate format and came from an authorized source. Additional assurance of  
 1233 integrity may be obtained by the proper use of error detection codes, message authentication  
 1234 codes, and digital signatures.

#### 1235 **5.4.2 Assurance of Domain Parameter Validity**

1236 Domain parameters are used by discrete log public-key algorithms during the generation of key  
 1237 pairs and digital signatures, and during the generation of shared secrets (during the execution  
 1238 of a key-agreement scheme) that are subsequently used to derive keying material. Assurance of  
 1239 the validity of the domain parameters is important to applications of public-key cryptography  
 1240 and **shall** be obtained prior to using them.

1241 Invalid domain parameters could void all intended security for all entities using the domain  
 1242 parameters. Methods for obtaining assurance of domain-parameter validity for the DSA and  
 1243 ECDSA digital signature algorithms are provided in [\[SP800-89\]](#). Methods for obtaining  
 1244 assurance of domain-parameter validity for finite-field and elliptic-curve discrete-log key-  
 1245 agreement algorithms are provided in [\[SP800-56A\]](#).

1246 Note that if a public key is certified by a CA for these algorithms, the CA could obtain this  
 1247 assurance during the certification process. Otherwise, the key-pair owner and any relying  
 1248 parties are responsible for obtaining the assurance.

#### 1249 **5.4.3 Assurance of Public-Key Validity**

1250 Assurance of public-key validity **shall** be obtained on all public keys before using them.

1251 Assurance of public-key validity gives the user confidence that the public key is arithmetically  
 1252 correct. This reduces the probability of using weak or corrupted keys. Invalid public keys could  
 1253 result in voiding the intended security, including the security of the operation (i.e., digital  
 1254 signature, key establishment, or encryption), leaking some or all information from the owner's  
 1255 private key, and leaking some or all information about a private key that is combined with an  
 1256 invalid public key (as may be done when key agreement or public-key encryption is  
 1257 performed). One of several ways to obtain assurance of validity is for an entity to verify certain  
 1258 mathematical properties that the public key should have. Another way is to obtain the  
 1259 assurance from a trusted third party (e.g., a CA) that the trusted party validated the properties.

1260 Methods of obtaining assurance of public-key validity for the DSA, ECDSA and RSA digital  
 1261 signature algorithms are provided in [\[SP800-89\]](#). Methods for obtaining this assurance for the  
 1262 finite-field and elliptic-curve discrete-log key-establishment schemes are provided in [\[SP800-  
 1263 56A\]](#). Methods for obtaining assurance of (partial) public-key validity for the RSA key-  
 1264 establishment schemes are provided in [\[SP800-56B\]](#).

#### 1265 **5.4.4 Assurance of Private-Key Possession**

1266 Assurance of static (i.e., long-term) private-key possession **shall** be obtained before the use of  
 1267 the corresponding static public key. Assurance of validity **shall** always be obtained prior to, or  
 1268 concurrently with, assurance of possession. Assurance of private-key possession **shall** be

1269 obtained by both the owner of the key pair and by other entities that receive the public key of  
1270 that key pair and use it to interact with the owner.

1271 For specific details regarding assurance of the possession of private key-establishment keys,  
1272 see [\[SP800-56A\]](#) and [\[SP800-56B\]](#); for specific details regarding assurance of the possession  
1273 of private digital-signature keys, see [\[SP800-89\]](#). Note that for public keys that are certified by  
1274 a CA, the CA could obtain this assurance during the certification process. Otherwise, the owner  
1275 and relying parties are responsible for obtaining the assurance.

## 1276 **5.5 Compromise of Keys and other Keying Material**

1277 Information protected by cryptographic mechanisms is secure only if the algorithms remain  
1278 strong, and the keys have not been compromised. Key compromise occurs when the protective  
1279 mechanisms for the key fail (e.g., the confidentiality, integrity or association of the key to its  
1280 owner fail - see [Section 6](#)), and the key can no longer be trusted to provide the required  
1281 security. When a key is compromised, all use of the key to apply cryptographic protection to  
1282 information (e.g., compute a digital signature or encrypt information) **shall** cease, and the  
1283 compromised key **shall** be revoked (see [Section 8.3.5](#)). However, the continued use of the key  
1284 under controlled circumstances to remove or verify the protections (e.g., decrypt or verify a  
1285 digital signature) may be warranted, depending on the risks of continued use and an  
1286 organization's Key Management Policy (see [\[SP800-57, Part 2\]](#)). The continued use of a  
1287 compromised key **shall** be limited to processing already-protected information. In this case, the  
1288 entity that uses the information **shall** be made fully aware of the dangers involved. Limiting the  
1289 cryptoperiod of the key limits the amount of material that would be compromised (exposed) if  
1290 the key were compromised. Using different keys for different purposes (e.g., different  
1291 applications, as well as different cryptographic mechanisms), as well as limiting the amount of  
1292 information protected by a single key, also achieves this purpose.

1293 The compromise of a key has the following implications:

- 1294 1. The unauthorized disclosure of a key means that another entity (an unauthorized entity)  
1295 may know the key and be able to use that key to perform computations requiring the  
1296 use of the key.

1297 In general, the unauthorized disclosure of a key used to provide confidentiality  
1298 protection<sup>21</sup> (i.e., via encryption) means that all information encrypted by that key could  
1299 be determined by unauthorized entities. For example, if a symmetric data-encryption  
1300 key is compromised, the unauthorized entity might use the key to decrypt past or future  
1301 encrypted information, i.e., the information is no longer confidential between the  
1302 authorized entities. In addition, a compromised key could be used by an adversary to  
1303 encrypt information of the adversary's choosing, thus providing false information.

1304 The unauthorized disclosure of a private signature key means that the integrity and non-  
1305 repudiation qualities of all data signed by that key are suspect. An unauthorized party in  
1306 possession of the private key could sign false information and make it appear to be  
1307 valid. In cases where it can be shown that the signed data was protected by other  
1308 mechanisms (e.g., physical security) from a time before the compromise, the signature  
1309 may still have some value. For example, if a signed message was received on day 1,

---

<sup>21</sup> As opposed to the confidentiality of a key that could, for example, be used as a signing private key.

1310 and it was later determined that the private signing key was compromised on day 15,  
 1311 the receiver may still have confidence that the message is valid because it was  
 1312 maintained in the receiver's possession before day 15. Note that cryptographic  
 1313 timestamping may also provide protection for messages signed before the private  
 1314 signature key was compromised. However, the security provided by these other  
 1315 mechanisms is now critical to the security of the signature. In addition, the non-  
 1316 repudiation of the signed message may be questioned, since the private signature key  
 1317 may have been disclosed to the message receiver, who then altered the message in some  
 1318 way.

1319 The disclosure of a CA's private signature key means that an adversary can create  
 1320 fraudulent certificates and Certificate Revocation Lists (CRLs).

1321 2. A compromise of the integrity of a key means that the key is incorrect – either that the  
 1322 key has been modified (either deliberately or accidentally), or that another key has been  
 1323 substituted; this includes a deletion (non-availability) of the key. The substitution or  
 1324 modification of a key used to provide integrity<sup>22</sup> calls into question the integrity of all  
 1325 information protected by the key.

1326 3. A compromise of a key's usage or application association means that the key could be  
 1327 used for the wrong purpose (e.g., for key establishment instead of digital signatures) or  
 1328 for the wrong application, and could result in the compromise of information protected  
 1329 by the key.

1330 4. A compromise of a key's association with the owner or other entity means that the  
 1331 identity of the other entity cannot be assured (i.e., one does not know who the other  
 1332 entity really is).

1333 5. A compromise of a key's association with other information means that there is no  
 1334 association at all, or the association is with the wrong "information". This could cause  
 1335 the cryptographic services to fail, information to be lost, or the security of the  
 1336 information to be compromised.

1337 Certain protective measures may be taken in order to minimize the likelihood or consequences  
 1338 of a key compromise. The following procedures are usually involved:

- 1339 a. Limiting the amount of time a symmetric or private key is in plaintext form.
- 1340 b. Preventing humans from viewing plaintext symmetric and private keys.
- 1341 c. Restricting plaintext symmetric and private keys to physically protected containers.  
 1342 This includes key generators, key-transport devices, key loaders, cryptographic  
 1343 modules, and key-storage devices.
- 1344 d. Using integrity checks to ensure that the integrity of a key or its association with other  
 1345 data has not been compromised. For example, keys may be wrapped (i.e., encrypted) in  
 1346 such a manner that unauthorized modifications to the wrapped key or to the key's  
 1347 metadata will be detected.

---

<sup>22</sup> As opposed to the integrity of a key that could, for example, be used for encryption.

- 1348 e. Employing key confirmation (see [Section 4.2.5.5](#)) to help ensure that the proper key  
1349 was, in fact, established.
- 1350 f. Establishing an accountability system that keeps track of each access to symmetric and  
1351 private keys in plaintext form.
- 1352 g. Providing a cryptographic integrity check on the key (e.g., using a MAC or a digital  
1353 signature).
- 1354 h. The use of trusted timestamps for signed data.
- 1355 i. Destroying keys as soon as they are no longer needed.
- 1356 j. Creating a compromise-recovery plan, especially in the case of the compromise of a CA  
1357 key.

1358 The worst form of key compromise is one that is not detected. Nevertheless, even in this case,  
1359 certain protective measures can be taken. Cryptographic Key Management Systems (CKMSs)  
1360 **should** be designed to mitigate the negative effects of a key compromise. A CKMS **should** be  
1361 designed so that the compromise of a single key compromises as little data as possible. For  
1362 example, a single cryptographic key could be used to protect the data of only a single user or a  
1363 limited number of users, rather than a large number of users. Often, systems have alternative  
1364 methods to authenticate communicating entities that do not rely solely on the possession of  
1365 keys. The object is to avoid building a system with catastrophic weaknesses.

1366 A compromise-recovery plan is essential for restoring cryptographic security services in the  
1367 event of a key compromise. A compromise-recovery plan **shall** be documented and easily  
1368 accessible. The plan may be included in the Key Management Practices Statement (see  
1369 [\[SP800-57, Part 2\]](#)). If not, the Key Management Practices Statement **should** reference the  
1370 compromise-recovery plan.

1371 Although compromise recovery is primarily a local action, the repercussions of a key  
1372 compromise are shared by the entire community that uses the system or equipment. Therefore,  
1373 compromise-recovery procedures **should** include the community at large. For example,  
1374 recovery from the compromise of a root CA's private signature key requires that all users of  
1375 the infrastructure obtain and install a new trust anchor certificate. Typically, this involves  
1376 physical procedures that are expensive to implement. To avoid these expensive procedures,  
1377 elaborate precautions to avoid compromise may be justified.

1378 The compromise-recovery plan **should** contain:

- 1379 1. The identification of the personnel to notify,
- 1380 2. The identification of the personnel to perform the recovery actions,
- 1381 3. The method for obtaining a new key (i.e., re-keying),
- 1382 4. An inventory of all cryptographic keys (e.g., the location of all certificates in a system),
- 1383 5. The education of all appropriate personnel on the recovery procedures,
- 1384 6. An identification of all personnel needed to support the recovery procedures,
- 1385 7. Policies that key-revocation checking be enforced (to minimize the effect of a  
1386 compromise),

1387 8. The monitoring of the re-keying operations (to ensure that all required operations are  
1388 performed for all affected keys), and

1389 9. Any other recovery procedures.

1390 Other compromise-recovery procedures may include:

1391 a. Physical inspection of the equipment,

1392 b. Identification of all information that may be compromised as a result of the incident,

1393 c. Identification of all signatures that may be invalid, due to the compromise of a signing  
1394 key, and

1395 d. Distribution of new keying material, if required.

## 1396 **5.6 Guidance for Cryptographic Algorithm and Key-Size Selection**

1397 Cryptographic algorithms that provide the security services identified in [Section 3](#) are specified  
1398 in Federal Information Processing Standards (FIPS) and NIST Recommendations. Several of  
1399 these algorithms are defined for a number of key sizes. This section provides guidance for the  
1400 selection of appropriate algorithms and key sizes.

1401 This section emphasizes the importance of acquiring cryptographic systems with appropriate  
1402 algorithm and key sizes to provide adequate protection for 1) the expected lifetime of the  
1403 system and 2) any data protected by that system during the expected lifetime of the data.

### 1404 **5.6.1 Comparable Algorithm Strengths**

1405 Cryptographic algorithms can provide different “strengths” of security, depending on the  
1406 algorithm and the key size used (when a key is employed). [Table 2](#) gives the current estimates  
1407 for the maximum security strengths that the **approved** symmetric and asymmetric  
1408 cryptographic algorithms can provide, given keys of a specified length. These estimates were  
1409 made under the assumption that the keys used with those algorithms are generated and handled  
1410 in accordance with specific rules (e.g., the keys are generated using RBGs that were seeded  
1411 with sufficient entropy). However, these rules are often not followed, and the security provided  
1412 to the data protected by those keys may be somewhat less than the security strength estimates  
1413 provided

1414 Two algorithms are considered to be of comparable strength for the given key sizes ( $X$  and  $Y$ ) if  
1415 the amount of work needed to “break the algorithms” or determine the keys (with the given key  
1416 sizes and sufficient entropy) is approximately the same using a given resource. The security  
1417 strength of an algorithm for a given key size is traditionally described in terms of the amount of  
1418 work it takes to try all keys for a symmetric algorithm with a key size of “ $X$ ” that has no short-  
1419 cut attacks (i.e., the most efficient attack is to try all possible keys). In this case, the best attack  
1420 is said to be the exhaustion attack. An algorithm that has a  $Y$ -bit key, but whose estimated  
1421 maximum security strength is comparable to a symmetric algorithm with an  $X$ -bit key is said  
1422 have an “estimated maximum security strength of  $X$  bits” or to be able to provide “ $X$  bits of  
1423 security”. Given a few plaintext blocks and corresponding ciphertext, an algorithm that can  
1424 provide  $X$  bits of security would, on average, take  $2^{X-1}T$  units of time to attack, where  $T$  is the  
1425 amount of time that is required to perform one encryption of a plaintext value and compare the  
1426 result against the corresponding ciphertext value.

1427 Determining the security strength of an algorithm can be nontrivial. For example, consider  
1428 TDEA, which uses three 56-bit keys ( $K_1$ ,  $K_2$  and  $K_3$ ). If each of these keys is independently

1429 generated, then this is called three-key TDEA (3TDEA). However, if  $K_1$  and  $K_2$  are  
 1430 independently generated, and  $K_3$  is set equal to  $K_1$ , then this is called two-key TDEA  
 1431 (2TDEA). One might expect that 3TDEA would provide  $56 \times 3 = 168$  bits of strength.  
 1432 However, there is an attack on 3TDEA that reduces the strength to the work that would be  
 1433 involved in exhausting a 112-bit key. For 2TDEA, if exhaustion were the best attack, then the  
 1434 strength of 2TDEA would be  $56 \times 2 = 112$  bits. This appears to be the case if the attacker has  
 1435 only a few matched plain and cipher pairs. However, the security strength of 2TDEA decreases  
 1436 as the number of matched plaintext/ciphertext pairs increases. If the attacker can obtain  
 1437 approximately  $2^{40}$  such pairs and has sufficient memory and computational power, then  
 1438 2TDEA can provide an estimated maximum security strength of about 80 bits; if the attacker  
 1439 has  $2^{56}$  plaintext/ciphertext pairs, with significantly more memory and computational power,  
 1440 then the estimated maximum security strength would be about 56 bits.

1441 The comparable key-size classes discussed in this section are based on estimates made as of the  
 1442 publication of this Recommendation using currently known methods. Advances in factoring  
 1443 algorithms, advances in general discrete-logarithm attacks, elliptic-curve discrete-logarithm  
 1444 attacks and quantum computing may affect these equivalencies in the future. New or improved  
 1445 attacks or technologies may be developed that leave some of the current algorithms completely  
 1446 insecure. If quantum attacks become practical, the asymmetric techniques may no longer be  
 1447 secure. Periodic reviews will be performed to determine whether the stated equivalencies need  
 1448 to be revised (e.g., the key sizes need to be increased) or the algorithms are no longer secure.

1449 The use of strong cryptographic algorithms may mitigate security issues other than just brute-  
 1450 force cryptographic attacks. The algorithms may unintentionally be implemented in a manner  
 1451 that leaks small amounts of information about the key. In this case, the larger key may reduce  
 1452 the likelihood that this leaked information will eventually compromise the key.

1453 When selecting a block-cipher cryptographic algorithm (e.g., AES or TDEA), the block size  
 1454 may also be a factor that should be considered, since the amount of security provided by  
 1455 several of the modes defined in [\[SP800-38\]](#) is dependent on the block size. More information  
 1456 on this issue is provided in [\[SP800-38\]](#).

1457 [Table 2](#) provides estimated, comparable maximum security strengths for the **approved**  
 1458 algorithms and key lengths.

- 1459 1. Column 1 indicates the estimated maximum security strength (in bits) provided by the  
 1460 algorithms and key sizes in a particular row. Note that the security strength is not  
 1461 necessarily the same as the length of the key for the algorithms in the other columns,  
 1462 due to attacks on those algorithms that provide computational advantages.
- 1463 2. Column 2 identifies the symmetric-key algorithms that can provide the security strength  
 1464 indicated in column 1, where 2TDEA and 3TDEA are specified in [\[SP800-67\]](#), and  
 1465 AES is specified in [\[FIPS197\]](#). 2TDEA is TDEA with two different keys; 3TDEA is  
 1466 TDEA with three different keys.
- 1467 3. Column 3 indicates the minimum size of the parameters associated with the standards  
 1468 that use finite-field cryptography (FFC). Examples of such algorithms include DSA, as  
 1469 defined in [\[FIPS186\]](#) for digital signatures, and Diffie-Hellman (DH) and MQV key  
 1470 agreement, as defined in [\[SP800-56A\]](#), where  $L$  is the size of the public key, and  $N$  is  
 1471 the size of the private key.

- 1472 4. Column 4 indicates the value for  $k$  (the size of the modulus  $n$ ) for algorithms based on  
 1473 integer-factorization cryptography (IFC). The predominant algorithm of this type is the  
 1474 RSA algorithm. RSA is **approved** in [FIPS186] for digital signatures, and in [\[SP800-  
 1475 56B\]](#) for key establishment. The value of  $k$  is commonly considered to be the key size.
- 1476 5. Column 5 indicates the range of  $f$  (the size of  $n$ , where  $n$  is the order of the base point  
 1477  $G$ ) for algorithms based on elliptic-curve cryptography (ECC) that are specified for  
 1478 digital signatures in [\[ANSX9.62\]](#) and adopted in [FIPS186], and for key establishment  
 1479 as specified in [SP800-56A]. The value of  $f$  is commonly considered to be the key size.

1480 **Table 2: Comparable strengths**

Security Strength	Symmetric key algorithms	FFC (e.g., DSA, D-H)	IFC (e.g., RSA)	ECC (e.g., ECDSA)
≤ 80	2TDEA <sup>23</sup>	$L = 1024$ $N = 160$	$k = 1024$	$f = 160-223$
112	3TDEA	$L = 2048$ $N = 224$	$k = 2048$	$f = 224-255$
128	AES-128	$L = 3072$ $N = 256$	$k = 3072$	$f = 256-383$
192	AES-192	$L = 7680$ $N = 384$	$k = 7680$	$f = 384-511$
256	AES-256	$L = 15360$ $N = 512$	$k = 15360$	$f = 512+$

1494 Note that the 192-bit and 256-bit key strengths identified for the FFC and IFC algorithms  
 1495 (shaded in yellow) are not currently included in the NIST standards for interoperability and  
 1496 efficiency reasons.

1497 Also, note that algorithm/key-size combinations that have been estimated at a maximum  
 1498 security strength of less than 112 bits (shaded in orange above) are no longer approved for  
 1499 applying cryptographic protection on Federal government information (e.g., encrypting data or  
 1500 generating a digital signature). However, some flexibility is allowed for processing already-  
 1501 protected information at those security strengths (e.g., decrypting encrypted data or verifying  
 1502 digital signatures), if the receiving entity accepts the risks associated with doing so. See  
 1503 [\[SP800131A\]](#) for more detailed information.

1504 Appropriate hash functions that may be employed will be determined by the algorithm, scheme  
 1505 or application in which the hash function is used and by the minimum security-strength to be  
 1506 provided. [Table 3](#) lists the **approved** hash functions specified in [\[FIPS186\]](#) and [\[FIPS202\]](#) that

<sup>23</sup> See the example in the third paragraph of [Section 5.6.1](#).

1507 can be used to provide each identified security strength for various hash-function applications:  
1508 digital signatures, HMAC, key derivation and random bit generation.

1509 **Table 3: Hash function that can be used to provide the targeted security strengths**

Security Strength	Digital Signatures and hash-only applications	HMAC <sup>24</sup> , Key Derivation Functions <sup>25</sup> , Random Number Generation <sup>26</sup>
≤ 80	SHA-1 <sup>27</sup>	
112	SHA-224, SHA-512/224, SHA3-224	
128	SHA-256, SHA-512/256, SHA3-256	SHA-1
192	SHA-384, SHA3-384	SHA-224, SHA-512/224
≥ 256	SHA-512, SHA3-512	SHA-256, SHA-512/256, SHA-384, SHA-512, SHA3-512

1510

1511 Note that some security strengths in the table do not indicate a hash function for the  
1512 application; it is always acceptable to use a hash function with a higher estimated maximum  
1513 security strength than that required for the application.

1514 Note that in the case of HMAC, which requires a key, the estimate assumes that a key whose  
1515 length and entropy are at least equal to the security strength is used.

1516 For some applications, a cryptographic key is associated with the application and needs to be  
1517 considered when determining the security strength actually afforded by the application. For  
1518 example, for the generation of digital signatures, the minimum key length for the keys for a  
1519 given security strength is provided in the FFC, IFC and ECC columns of [Table 2](#); while for  
1520 HMAC, the key lengths are discussed in [\[SP800-107\]](#).

1521 Note that hash functions and applications providing less than 112 bits of security strength  
1522 (shaded in orange) are no longer approved for applying cryptographic protection on Federal  
1523 government information (e.g., generating a digital signature). However, some flexibility is  
1524 allowed for processing already-protected information at those security strengths (e.g., verifying  
1525 digital signatures), if the receiving entity accepts the risks associated with doing so. See  
1526 [\[SP800131A\]](#) for more detailed information.

<sup>24</sup> Assumes that pre-image resistance is required, rather than collision resistance.

<sup>25</sup> The security strength for key-derivation assumes that the shared secret contains sufficient entropy to support the desired security strength.

<sup>26</sup> The security strength assumes that the random number generator has been provided with adequate entropy to support the desired security strength.

<sup>27</sup> SHA-1 has been demonstrated to provide less than 80 bits of security for digital signatures, which require collision resistance; at the publication of this Recommendation, the security strength against digital signature collisions remains the subject of speculation.

## 1527 5.6.2 Defining Appropriate Algorithm Suites

1528 Many applications require the use of several different cryptographic algorithms. When several  
1529 algorithms can be used to perform the same service, some algorithms are inherently more  
1530 efficient because of their design (e.g., AES has been designed to be more efficient than  
1531 TDEA).

1532 In many cases, a variety of key sizes may be available for an algorithm. For some of the  
1533 algorithms (e.g., public-key algorithms, such as RSA), the use of larger key sizes than are  
1534 required may impact operations, e.g., larger keys may take longer to generate or longer to  
1535 process the data. However, the use of key sizes that are too small may not provide adequate  
1536 security.

1537 [Table 4](#) provides general recommendations that may be used to select an appropriate suite of  
1538 algorithms and key sizes for Federal Government unclassified applications to protect sensitive  
1539 data. A schedule for increasing the security strengths for applying cryptographic protection to  
1540 data (e.g., encrypting or digitally signing) is specified in the table. Transition details for  
1541 algorithms, key sizes and applications are provided in [\[SP800-131A\]](#). The table is organized as  
1542 follows:

- 1543 1. Column 1 is divided into two sub-columns. The first sub-column indicates the security  
1544 strength to be provided; the second sub-column indicates whether cryptographic  
1545 protection is being applied to data (e.g., encrypted), or whether cryptographically  
1546 protected data is being processed (e.g., decrypted).  
1547
- 1548 2. Columns 2 and 3 indicate the time frames during which the security strength is either  
1549 acceptable, OK for legacy use or disallowed<sup>28</sup>.
  - 1550 • “Acceptable” indicates that the algorithm or key length is not known to be insecure.
  - 1551 • “Legacy-use” means that an algorithm or key length may be used because of its use  
1552 in legacy applications (i.e., the algorithm or key length can be used to process  
1553 cryptographically protected data).
  - 1554 • “Disallowed” means that an algorithm or key length **shall not** be used for applying  
1555 cryptographic protection.

1556 See [\[SP800-131A\]](#) for specific details and for any exceptions to the general guidance provided  
1557 in [Table 4](#).

1558

**Table 4: Security-strength time frames**

Security Strength		Through 2030	2031 and Beyond
≤ 80	Applying	Disallowed	
	Processing	Legacy-use	
112	Applying	Acceptable	Disallowed

<sup>28</sup> A fourth category – deprecated – was used in the previous version of this Recommendation, but is not currently being used.

Security Strength		Through 2030	2031 and Beyond
	Processing		Legacy use
128	Applying/Processing	Acceptable	Acceptable
192		Acceptable	Acceptable
256		Acceptable	Acceptable

1559

1560 If the security life of information extends beyond one time period specified in the table into the  
 1561 next time period (the later time period), the algorithms and key sizes specified for the later time  
 1562 period **shall** be used for applying cryptographic protection (e.g., encryption). The following  
 1563 examples are provided to clarify the use of the table:

1564 1. If information is cryptographically protected (e.g., digitally signed) in 2015, and the  
 1565 maximum-expected security life of that data is only one year, any of the **approved**  
 1566 digital-signature algorithms or key sizes that provide at least 112 bits of security  
 1567 strength may be used.

1568 2. If the information is to be digitally signed in 2025, and the expected security life of the  
 1569 data is six years, then an algorithm or key size that provides at least 128 bits of security  
 1570 strength is required.

1571 **5.6.3 Using Algorithm Suites**

1572 Algorithm suites that combine algorithms with a mixture of estimated maximum security  
 1573 strengths is generally discouraged. However, algorithms of different strengths and key sizes  
 1574 may be used together for performance, availability or interoperability reasons, provided that  
 1575 sufficient protection is provided to the data to be protected. In general, the weakest algorithm  
 1576 and key size used to provide cryptographic protection determines the strength of the protection.  
 1577 A determination of the actual strength of the protection provided for information includes an  
 1578 analysis not only of the algorithm(s) and key size(s) used to apply the cryptographic  
 1579 protection(s) to the information, but also the details of how the key was generated (e.g., the  
 1580 security strength supported by the RBG used during the generation of the key) and how the key  
 1581 was handled subsequent to generation (e.g., was the key wrapped by an algorithm with a  
 1582 security strength less than the security strength intended for the key's use.

1583 The following is a list of several algorithm combinations and discussions on the security  
 1584 implications of the algorithm/key-size combination:

1585 1. When a key-establishment scheme is used to establish keying material for use with one  
 1586 or more algorithms (e.g., TDEA, AES, or HMAC), the security strength that can be  
 1587 supported by the keying material is determined by the weakest algorithm and key size  
 1588 used. For example, if a 224-bit ECC key is used as specified in [\[SP80056A\]](#) to establish  
 1589 a 128-bit AES key, no more than 112 bits of security can be provided for any  
 1590 information protected by that AES key, since the 224-bit ECC can only provide a  
 1591 maximum of 112 bits of security.

1592 2. When a hash function and digital signature algorithm are used in combination to  
 1593 compute a digital signature, the security strength of the signature is determined by the

1594 weaker of the two processes. For example, if SHA-256 is used with RSA and a 2048-bit  
 1595 key, the combination can provide no more than 112 bits of security, because a 2048-bit  
 1596 RSA key cannot provide more than 112 bits of security strength.

1597 3. When a random bit generator is used to generate a key for a cryptographic algorithm  
 1598 that is intended to provide  $X$  bits of security, an **approved** random bit generator **shall**  
 1599 be used that provides at least  $X$  bits of security.

1600 If it is determined that a specific level of security is required for the protection of data, then an  
 1601 algorithm and key size suite needs to be selected that could provide that level of security (as a  
 1602 minimum). For example, if 128 bits of security are required for data that is to be communicated  
 1603 and provided with confidentiality protection, and integrity and source authentication, the  
 1604 following selection of algorithms and key sizes may be appropriate:

1605 a. Confidentiality: Encrypt the information using AES-128. Other AES key sizes would  
 1606 also be appropriate, but performance may be a little slower.

1607 b. Integrity authentication and source authentication: If only one cryptographic operation  
 1608 is preferred, use digital signatures. SHA-256 or a larger hash function could be used.  
 1609 Select an algorithm for digital signatures from what is available to an application (e.g.,  
 1610 ECDSA with at least a 256-bit key). If more than one algorithm and key size is  
 1611 available, the selection may be based on algorithm performance, memory requirements,  
 1612 etc., as long as the minimum requirements are met.

1613 c. Key establishment: Select a key-establishment scheme that is based on the application  
 1614 and environment (see [SP800-56A] or [\[SP800-56B\]](#)), the availability of an algorithm in  
 1615 an implementation, and its performance. Select a key size from [Table 2](#) for an  
 1616 algorithm and key size that can provide at least 128 bits of security. For example, if an  
 1617 ECC key-agreement scheme is available, use an ECC scheme with at least a 256-bit key  
 1618 (the value of  $f$  in [Table 2](#)). However, the key used for key agreement **shall** be different  
 1619 from the ECDSA key used for digital signatures.

1620 Agencies that procure systems **should** consider the potential operational lifetime of the system.  
 1621 The agencies **shall** either select algorithms that are expected to be secure during the entire  
 1622 system lifetime, or **should** ensure that the algorithms and key sizes can be readily updated.

#### 1623 **5.6.4 Transitioning to New Algorithms and Key Sizes**

1624 The estimated time period during which data protected by a specific cryptographic algorithm  
 1625 (and key size) remains secure is called the *algorithm security lifetime*. During this time, the  
 1626 algorithm may be used to both apply cryptographic protection (e.g., encrypt data) and to  
 1627 process the protected information (e.g., decrypt data); the algorithm is expected to provide  
 1628 adequate protection for the protected data during this period.

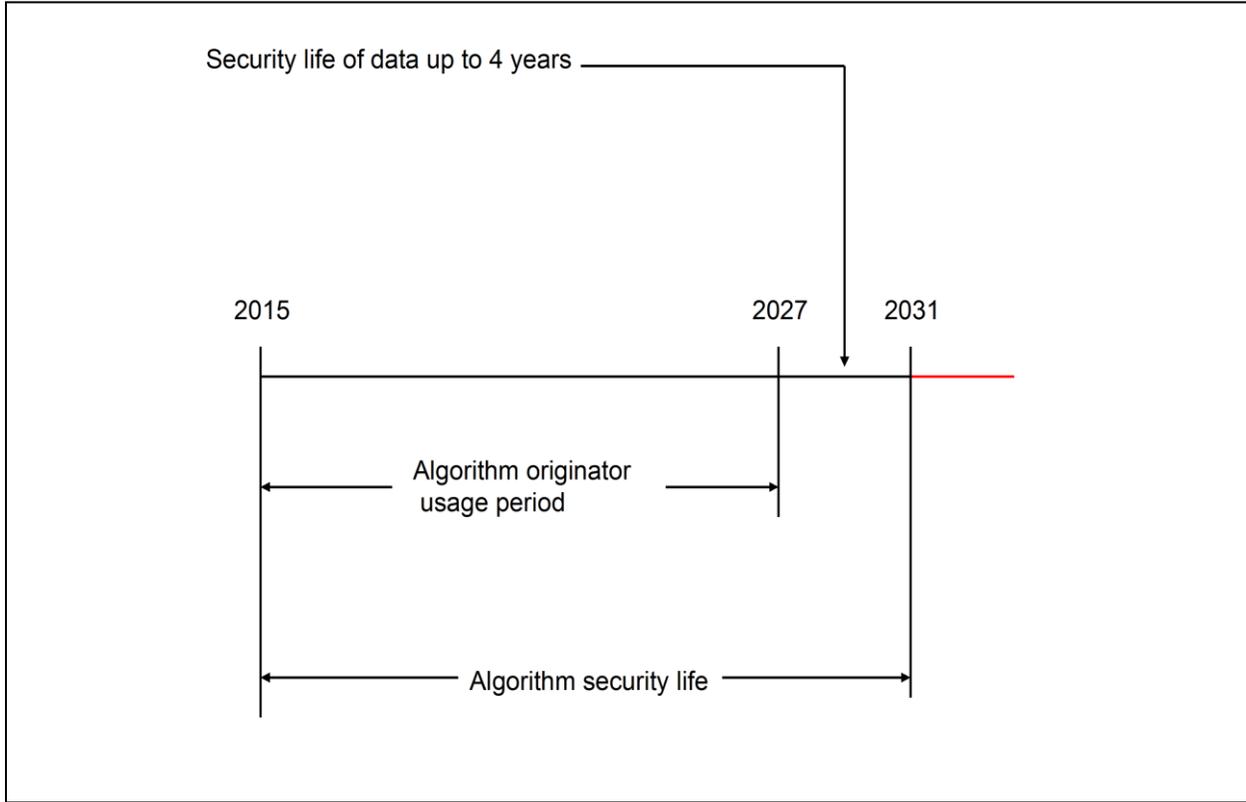
1629 Typically, an organization selects the cryptographic services that are needed for a particular  
 1630 application. Then, based on the algorithm security lifetime and the security life of the data to  
 1631 be protected, an algorithm and key-size suite is selected that is sufficient to meet the  
 1632 requirements. The organization then establishes a key-management system (if required),  
 1633 including validated cryptographic products that provide the services required by the  
 1634 application. As an algorithm and/or key-size suite nears the end of its security lifetime,  
 1635 transitioning to a new algorithm and key-size suite **should** be planned.

1636 When the algorithm or key size is determined to no longer provide the desired protection for  
1637 information (e.g., the algorithm may have been "broken"), any information protected by the  
1638 algorithm or key size is considered to be suspect (e.g., the data may no longer be confidential,  
1639 or the integrity cannot be assured). If the protected data is retained, it **should** be re-protected  
1640 using an **approved** algorithm and key size that will protect the information for the remainder  
1641 of its security life. However, it **should** be assumed that encrypted information could have been  
1642 collected and retained by unauthorized entities (adversaries) for decryption at some later time.  
1643 In addition, the recovered plaintext could be used to attempt a matched plaintext-ciphertext  
1644 attack on the new algorithm.

1645 When using Tables [2](#), [3](#) and [4](#) to select the appropriate algorithm and key size, it is very  
1646 important to take the expected security life of the data into consideration. As stated earlier, an  
1647 algorithm (and key size) may be used both to apply cryptographic protection to data and  
1648 process the protected data. When the security life of the data is taken into account,  
1649 cryptographic protection **should not** be applied to data using a given algorithm (and key size)  
1650 if the security life of the data extends beyond the end of the algorithm security lifetime (i.e.,  
1651 into the timeframe when the algorithm or key size is disallowed; see [Table 4](#)). The period of  
1652 time that an algorithm (and key size) may be used to apply cryptographic protection is called  
1653 the *algorithm originator-usage period*. The algorithm security life = (the algorithm usage  
1654 period + the security life of the data) (see [Figure 2](#)).

1655 For example, suppose that 3TDEA is to be used to provide confidentiality protection for data  
1656 with a security life of four years. [Table 2](#) indicates that 3TDEA has a maximum security  
1657 strength of 112 bits. [Table 4](#) indicates that an algorithm with a security strength of 112 bits has  
1658 an algorithm security lifetime that extends through 2030 for applying cryptographic protection  
1659 (i.e., encryption, in this case), but not beyond. Since the data has a four-year security life, the  
1660 algorithm originator-usage period must end by December 31 2026 (rather than 2030) in order  
1661 to ensure that all data protected by 3TDEA is secure during its entire security life (i.e., the  
1662 algorithm could not be used to encrypt data beyond 2026). See [Figure 2](#). After 2026, the  
1663 algorithm could be used to decrypt data for another four years, with the expectation that the  
1664 confidentiality of the data continues to be protected at a security strength of 112 bits. If the  
1665 security life of the data was estimated correctly, the data would no longer need this  
1666 confidentiality protection after 2030. However, if the security life of the data is longer than  
1667 originally expected, then the protection provided after 2030 may be less than required, and  
1668 there is some risk that the confidentiality of the data may be compromised (after 2030);  
1669 accepting the risk associated with the possible compromise is indicated by the "legacy use"  
1670 indication in [Table 4](#).

1671 When initiating cryptographic protections for information, the strongest algorithm and key size  
1672 that is appropriate for providing the protection **should** be used in order to minimize costly  
1673 transitions. However, it should be noted that selecting some algorithms or key sizes that are  
1674 unnecessarily large might have adverse performance effects (e.g., the algorithm may be  
1675 unacceptably slow).



**Figure 2: Algorithm Originator-Usage Period Example**

1676 The process of transitioning to a new algorithm or a new key size may be as simple as selecting  
 1677 a more secure option in the security suites offered by the current system, or it can be as  
 1678 complex as building a whole new system. However, given that it is necessary to develop a new  
 1679 algorithm suite for a system, the following issues should be considered.

- 1680 1. **The sensitivity of information and the system lifetime:** The sensitivity of the  
 1681 information that will need to be protected by the system for the lifetime of the new  
 1682 algorithm(s) should be evaluated in order to determine the minimum security-  
 1683 requirement for the system. Care should be taken not to underestimate the required  
 1684 lifetime of the system or the sensitivity of information that it may need to protect.  
 1685 Many decisions that were initially considered as temporary or interim decisions  
 1686 about data sensitivity have since been proven to be inadequate (e.g., the sensitivity  
 1687 of the information lasted well beyond its initially expected lifetime).
- 1688 2. **Algorithm selection:** New algorithms should be carefully selected to ensure that  
 1689 they meet or exceed the minimum security-requirement of the system. In general, it  
 1690 is relatively easy to select cryptographic algorithms and key sizes that offer high  
 1691 security. However, it is wise for the amateur to consult a cryptographic expert when  
 1692 making such decisions. Systems **should** offer algorithm-suite options that provide  
 1693 for future growth.
- 1694 3. **System design:** A new system **should** be designed to meet the minimum  
 1695 performance and security requirements. This is often a difficult task, since

- 1696 performance and security goals may conflict. All aspects of security (e.g., physical  
 1697 security, computer security, operational security, and personnel security) are  
 1698 involved. If a current system is to be modified to incorporate new algorithms, the  
 1699 consequences need to be analyzed. For example, the existing system may require  
 1700 significant modifications to accommodate the footprints (e.g., key sizes, block sizes,  
 1701 etc.) of the new algorithms. In addition, the security measures (other than the  
 1702 cryptographic algorithms) retained from the current system **should** be reviewed to  
 1703 assure that they will continue to be effective in the new system.
- 1704 4. **Pre-implementation evaluation:** Strong cryptography may be poorly  
 1705 implemented. Therefore, a changeover to new cryptographic techniques **should not**  
 1706 be made without an evaluation as to how effective and secure they are in the  
 1707 system.
- 1708 5. **Testing:** Any system **should** be tested before it is employed.
- 1709 6. **Training:** If the new system requires that new or different tasks (e.g., key  
 1710 management procedures) be performed, then the individuals who will perform those  
 1711 tasks **should** be properly trained. Features that are thought to be improvements may  
 1712 be viewed as annoyances by an untrained user.
- 1713 7. **System implementation and transition:** Care **should** be taken to implement the  
 1714 system as closely as possible to the design. Exceptions **should** be noted.
- 1715 8. **Transition:** A transition plan **should** be developed and followed so that the  
 1716 changeover from the old to the new system runs as smoothly as possible.
- 1717 9. **Post-implementation evaluation:** The system **should** be evaluated to verify that  
 1718 the implemented system meets the minimum security requirements.

#### 1719 5.6.5 Security Strength Reduction

1720 At some time, the security strength provided by an algorithm or key may be reduced or lost  
 1721 completely. For example, the algorithm or key length used may no longer offer adequate  
 1722 security because of improvements in computational capability or cryptanalysis. In this case,  
 1723 applying protection to “new” information can be performed using stronger algorithms or keys.  
 1724 However, information that was previously protected using these now-inadequate algorithms  
 1725 and keys may no longer be secure. This information may include other keys, or other sensitive  
 1726 data protected by the keys. A reduction in the security strength provided by an algorithm or key  
 1727 has the following implications:

- 1728 • Encrypted information: The security of encrypted information that was available at any  
 1729 time to unauthorized entities in its encrypted form should be considered suspect. For  
 1730 example, keys that were transmitted in encrypted form (e.g., using a key-wrapping key  
 1731 or key-transport key and an algorithm or key length that is later broken) may need to be  
 1732 considered as compromised, since an adversary could have saved the encrypted form of  
 1733 the keys for later decryption in case methods for breaking the algorithm would  
 1734 eventually be found (see [Section 5.5](#) for a discussion of key compromise). Even if the  
 1735 transmitted, encrypted information is subsequently re-encrypted for storage using a  
 1736 different key or algorithm, the information may already be compromised because of the  
 1737 weakness of the transmission algorithm or key.

1738 Encrypted information that was not "exposed" in this manner (e.g., not transmitted)  
 1739 may still be secure, even though the encryption algorithm or key length no longer  
 1740 provides adequate protection. For example, if the encrypted form of the keys and the  
 1741 information protected by those keys was never transmitted, then the information may  
 1742 still be confidential.

1743 The lessons to be learned are that an encryption mechanism used for information that  
 1744 will be available to unauthorized entities in its encrypted form (e.g., via transmission)  
 1745 should provide a high level of security protection, and the use of each key should be  
 1746 limited (i.e., the cryptoperiod should be short) so that a compromised key cannot be  
 1747 used to reveal very much information. If the algorithm itself is broken<sup>29</sup>, an adversary is  
 1748 forced to perform more work when each key is used to encrypt a very limited amount  
 1749 of information in order to decrypt all of the information. See [Section 5.3.6](#) for a  
 1750 discussion about cryptoperiods.

1751 • Digital signatures on stored data<sup>30</sup>: Digital signatures may be computed on data prior to  
 1752 transmission and subsequent storage. In this case, both the signed data and the digital  
 1753 signature would be stored. If the security strength of the signature is later reduced (e.g.,  
 1754 because of a break of the algorithm), the signature may still be valid if the stored data  
 1755 and its associated digital signature have been adequately protected from modification  
 1756 since a time prior to the reduction in strength (e.g., by applying a digital signature using  
 1757 a stronger algorithm or key). See [Section 5.5](#), item 1 for further discussion. Storage  
 1758 capabilities are being developed that employ cryptographic timestamps to store  
 1759 digitally signed data beyond the normal security life of the original signature  
 1760 mechanism or its keys.

1761 • Symmetric authentication codes on stored data<sup>31</sup>: Like digital signatures, symmetric  
 1762 authentication codes (i.e., MACs) may be computed on data prior to transmission and  
 1763 subsequent storage. If the received data and authentication code are stored as received,  
 1764 and the security strength of the authentication algorithm or key is later reduced (e.g.,  
 1765 because of a break of the algorithm), the authentication code may still be valid if the  
 1766 stored data and its associated authentication code have been adequately protected from  
 1767 modification since a time prior to the reduction in strength (e.g., by applying another  
 1768 authentication code using a stronger algorithm or key). See [Section 5.5](#), item 1 for  
 1769 further discussion. Storage capabilities are being developed that employ cryptographic  
 1770 timestamps to store authenticated data beyond the normal security life of the original  
 1771 authentication mechanism or its keys.

1772

---

<sup>29</sup> It is easier to recover a key than exhaustive search.

<sup>30</sup> Digital signatures on data that is transmitted, but not stored are not considered, as their value is considered to be short-lived, e.g., the digital signature was intended to be used to detect errors introduced only during transmission.

<sup>31</sup> Symmetric authentication codes on data that is transmitted, but not stored are not considered, as their value is considered to be short-lived.

## 1773 **6 Protection Requirements for Cryptographic Information**

1774 This section gives guidance on the types of protection required for keying material.  
 1775 Cryptographic keying material is defined as the cryptographic key and associated information  
 1776 required to use the key (i.e., the metadata). The specific information varies, depending on the  
 1777 type of key. The cryptographic keying material must be protected in order for the security  
 1778 services to be “meaningful.” A FIPS 140-validated cryptographic module may provide much of  
 1779 the protection needed; however, whenever the keying material exists external to a [\[FIPS140\]](#)  
 1780 cryptographic module, additional protection is required. The type of protection needed depends  
 1781 on the type of key and the security service for which the key is used. [\[SP800-152\]](#) provides  
 1782 guidance for Federal Cryptographic Key Management Systems (FCKMSs) on the protection of  
 1783 keys and metadata when outside a FIPS 140-validated cryptographic module, as well as other  
 1784 key management factors to be addressed.

### 1785 **6.1 Protection and Assurance Requirements**

1786 Keying material **should** be (operationally) available as long as the associated cryptographic  
 1787 service is required. Keys may be maintained within a cryptographic module while they are  
 1788 being actively used, or they may be stored externally (provided that proper protection is  
 1789 afforded) and recalled as needed. Some keys may need to be archived if required beyond the  
 1790 key’s originator-usage period (see [Section 5.3.5](#)).

1791 The following protections and assurances may be required for the keying material.

1792 *Integrity protection shall* be provided for all keying material. Integrity protection always  
 1793 involves checking the source and format of received keying material (see [Section 5.4.1](#)).  
 1794 When the key exists within a validated cryptographic module, appropriate integrity  
 1795 protection is provided when the cryptographic module conforms to [\[FIPS140\]](#), at a security  
 1796 level that is consistent with the [\[FIPS 199\]](#) impact level associated with the data to be  
 1797 protected by the key (see [\[SP800-152\]](#)). When a key is available outside a cryptographic  
 1798 module, integrity protection **shall** be provided by appropriate cryptographic integrity  
 1799 mechanisms (e.g. cryptographic checksums, cryptographic hash functions, MACs, and  
 1800 digital signatures), non-cryptographic integrity mechanisms (e.g. CRCs, parity checks, etc.)  
 1801 (see [Appendix A](#)), or physical protection mechanisms. Guidance for the selection of  
 1802 appropriate integrity mechanisms is given in Sections [6.2.1.2](#) and [6.2.2.2](#).

1803 *Confidentiality protection* for all symmetric and private keys **shall** be provided. Public keys  
 1804 generally do not require confidentiality protection. When the symmetric or private key  
 1805 exists within a validated cryptographic module, appropriate confidentiality protection is  
 1806 provided when the cryptographic module conforms to [\[FIPS140\]](#), at a security level that is  
 1807 consistent with the [\[FIPS199\]](#) impact level associated with the data to be protected by the  
 1808 key (see [\[SP800-152\]](#)). When a symmetric or private key is available outside a  
 1809 cryptographic module, confidentiality protection **shall** be provided either by encryption  
 1810 (e.g., key wrapping) at an appropriate security strength (see [\[SP800-152\]](#)), by the use of  
 1811 separate key components (see [Section 6.2.1.3](#)) or by controlling access to the key via  
 1812 physical means (e.g. storing the keying material in a safe with limited access). The security  
 1813 and operational impact of specific confidentiality mechanisms varies. Guidance for the  
 1814 selection of appropriate confidentiality mechanisms is given in Sections [6.2.1.3](#) and [6.2.2.3](#).

1815 *Association protection shall* be provided for a cryptographic security service by ensuring  
 1816 that the correct keying material is used with the correct data in the correct application or  
 1817 equipment. Guidance for the selection of appropriate association protection is given in  
 1818 Sections [6.2.1.4](#) and [6.2.2.4](#).

1819 *Assurance of domain-parameter and public-key validity* provides confidence that the  
 1820 parameters and keys are arithmetically correct (see Sections [5.4.2](#) and [5.4.3](#)). Guidance for  
 1821 the selection of appropriate validation mechanisms is given in [\[SP800-56A\]](#) and [\[SP800-](#)  
 1822 [89\]](#), as well as in this document.

1823 *Assurance of private key possession* provides assurance that the owner of a public key  
 1824 actually possesses the corresponding private key (see [Section 5.4.4](#)).

1825 The *period of protection* for cryptographic keys, associated key information, and cryptographic  
 1826 parameters (e.g. initialization vectors) depends on the type of key, the associated cryptographic  
 1827 service, and the length of time for which the cryptographic service is required. The period of  
 1828 protection includes the cryptoperiod of the key (see [Section 5.3](#)). The period of protection is  
 1829 not necessarily the same for integrity as it is for confidentiality. Integrity protection may only  
 1830 be required until a key is no longer used (but not yet destroyed), but confidentiality protection  
 1831 may be required until the key is actually destroyed.

### 1832 **6.1.1 Summary of Protection and Assurance Requirements for Cryptographic Keys**

1833 [Table 5](#) provides a summary of the protection requirements for keys during distribution and  
 1834 storage. Methods for providing the necessary protection are discussed in [Section 6.2](#).

1835 Guide to [Table 5](#):

- 1836 a. Column 1 (Key Type) identifies the key types.
- 1837 b. Column 2 (Security Service) indicates the type of security service that is provided by  
 1838 the key in conjunction with a cryptographic technique. In some cases, the word  
 1839 "support" is used in this column. This means that the associated key is used to support  
 1840 the primary cryptographic services of confidentiality, integrity authentication, and  
 1841 source authentication. For example, a key-agreement key may support a confidentiality  
 1842 service by establishing the key used to provide confidentiality; an RBG key is used to  
 1843 provide the random values for generating the keys to be used to generate digital  
 1844 signatures.
- 1845 c. Column 3 (Security Protection) indicates the type of protection required for the key  
 1846 (i.e., integrity and confidentiality).
- 1847 d. Column 4 (Association Protection) indicates the types of associations that need to be  
 1848 protected for that key, such as associating the key with the usage or application, the  
 1849 authorized communications participants or other indicated information. The association  
 1850 with domain parameters applies only to algorithms where they are used.
- 1851 e. Column 5 (Assurances Required) indicates whether assurance of public-key validity  
 1852 and/or assurance of private-key possession needs to be obtained as defined in [\[SP800-](#)  
 1853 [56A\]](#), [\[SP800-56B\]](#), [\[SP800-89\]](#) and this Recommendation. Assurance of public-key  
 1854 validity provides a degree of confidence that a key is arithmetically correct. See [Section](#)  
 1855 [5.4.3](#) for further details. Assurance of private-key possession provides a degree of

- 1856 confidence that the entity providing a public key actually possessed the associated  
 1857 private key at some time. See [Section 5.4.4](#) for further details.
- 1858 f. Column 6 (Period of Protection) indicates the length of time that the integrity and/or  
 1859 confidentiality of the key needs to be maintained (see [Section 5.3](#)). Symmetric keys and  
 1860 private keys **shall be** destroyed at the end of their period of protection (see Sections  
 1861 [8.3.4](#) and [9.3](#)).

1862 **Table 5: Protection requirements for cryptographic keys**

Key Type	Security Service	Security Protection	Association Protection	Assurances Required	Period of Protection
Private signature key	Source authentication; Integrity authentication; Support non-repudiation	Integrity <sup>32</sup> ; Confidentiality	Usage or application; Domain parameters; Public signature-verification key	Possession	From generation until the end of the cryptoperiod
Public signature-verification key	Source authentication; Integrity authentication; Support non-repudiation	Integrity;	Usage or application; Key pair owner Domain parameters; Private signature key; Signed data	Validity	From generation until no protected data needs to be verified
Symmetric authentication key	Source authentication; Integrity authentication	Integrity; Confidentiality	Usage or application; Other authorized entities; Authenticated data		From generation until no protected data needs to be verified
Private authentication key	Source authentication; Integrity authentication	Integrity; Confidentiality	Usage or application; Public authentication key; Domain parameters	Possession	From generation until the end of the cryptoperiod
Public authentication key	Source authentication; Integrity authentication	Integrity	Usage or application; Key pair owner; Authenticated data; Private authentication key; Domain parameters	Validity	From generation until no protected data needs to be authenticated

<sup>32</sup> Integrity protection can be provided by a variety of means. See Sections [6.2.1.2](#) and [6.2.2.2](#).

Symmetric data-encryption/decryption key	Confidentiality	Integrity; Confidentiality	Usage or application; Other authorized entities; Plaintext/Encrypted data		From generation until the end of the lifetime of the data or the end of the cryptoperiod, whichever comes later
Symmetric key-wrapping key	Support	Integrity; Confidentiality	Usage or application; Other authorized entities; Encrypted keys		From generation until the end of the cryptoperiod or until no wrapped keys require protection, whichever is later.
Symmetric RBG keys	Support	Integrity; Confidentiality	Usage or application		From generation until replaced
Symmetric master key	Support	Integrity; Confidentiality	Usage or application; Other authorized entities; Derived keys		From generation until the end of the cryptoperiod or the end of the lifetime of the derived keys, whichever is later.
Private key-transport key	Support	Integrity; Confidentiality	Usage or application; Encrypted keys; Public key-transport key	Possession	From generation until the end of the period of protection for all transported keys
Public key-transport key	Support	Integrity	Usage or application; Key pair owner; Private key-transport key	Validity	From generation until the end of the cryptoperiod
Symmetric key-agreement key	Support	Integrity; Confidentiality	Usage or application; Other authorized entities		From generation until the end of the cryptoperiod or until no longer needed to determine a key, whichever is later
Private static key-agreement key	Support	Integrity; Confidentiality	Usage or application; Domain parameters; Public static key-agreement key	Possession	From generation until the end of the cryptoperiod or until no longer needed to determine a key, whichever is later

Public static key-agreement key	Support	Integrity	Usage or application; Key pair owner; Domain parameters; Private static key-agreement key	Validity	From generation until the end of the cryptoperiod or until no longer needed to determine a key, whichever is later
Private ephemeral key-agreement key	Support	Integrity; Confidentiality	Usage or application; Public ephemeral key-agreement key; Domain parameters;		From generation until the end of the key-agreement process After the end of the process, the key <b>shall</b> be destroyed
Public ephemeral key-agreement key	Support	Integrity <sup>33</sup>	Key pair owner; Private ephemeral key-agreement key; Usage or application; Domain parameters	Validity	From generation until the key-agreement process is complete
Symmetric authorization keys	Authorization	Integrity; Confidentiality	Usage or application; Other authorized entities		From generation until the end of the cryptoperiod of the key
Private authorization key	Authorization	Integrity; Confidentiality	Usage or application; Public authorization key; Domain parameters	Possession	From generation until the end of the cryptoperiod of the key
Public authorization key	Authorization	Integrity	Usage or application; Key pair owner; Private authorization key; Domain parameters	Validity	From generation until the end of the cryptoperiod of the key

1863

1864 **6.1.2 Summary of Protection Requirements for Other Cryptographic or Related**  
 1865 **Information**

1866 [Table 6](#) provides a summary of the protection requirements for other cryptographic information  
 1867 during distribution and storage. Mechanisms for providing the necessary protection are  
 1868 discussed in [Section 6.2](#).

---

<sup>33</sup> The confidentiality of public ephemeral key-agreement keys may not be protected during transmission; however, the key-agreement protocols may be designed to detect unauthorized substitutions and modifications of the transmitted public ephemeral keys. In this case, the protocols form the data integrity mechanism.

1869 Guide to Table 6:

- 1870 a. Column 1 (Cryptographic Information Type) identifies the type of cryptographic  
1871 information.
- 1872 b. Column 2 (Security Service) indicates the type of security service provided by the  
1873 cryptographic information.
- 1874 c. Column 3 (Security Protection) indicates the type of security protection for the  
1875 cryptographic information.
- 1876 d. Column 4 (Association Protection) indicates the relevant types of associations for each  
1877 type of cryptographic information.
- 1878 e. Column 5 (Assurance of Domain Parameter Validity) indicates the cryptographic  
1879 information for which assurance **shall** be obtained as defined in [\[SP800-56A\]](#) and  
1880 [\[SP800-89\]](#) and in [Section 5.4](#) of this Recommendation. Assurance of domain-  
1881 parameter validity gives confidence that domain parameters are arithmetically correct.
- 1882 f. Column 6 (Period of Protection) indicates the length of time that the integrity and/or  
1883 confidentiality of the cryptographic information needs to be maintained. The  
1884 cryptographic information **shall** be destroyed at the end of the period of protection (see  
1885 [Section 8.3.4](#)).

1886 **Table 6: Protection requirements for other cryptographic or related material**

Crypto. Information Type	Security Service	Security Protection	Association Protection	Assurance of Domain Parameter Validity	Period of Protection
Domain parameters	Depends on the key assoc. with the parameters	Integrity	Usage or application; Private and public keys	Yes	From generation until no longer needed to generate keys or verify signatures
Initialization vectors	Depends on the algorithm	Integrity <sup>34</sup>	Protected data		From generation until no longer needed to process the protected data
Shared secrets	Support	Confidentiality; Integrity			From generation until the end of the transaction. The shared secret <b>shall</b> be destroyed at the end of the period of protection
RBG Seeds	Support	Confidentiality; Integrity	Usage or application		Used once and destroyed immediately after use

<sup>34</sup> IVs are not generally protected during transmission; however, the decryption system may be designed to detect or minimize the effect of unauthorized substitutions and modifications to transmitted IVs. In this case the decryption system is the data-integrity mechanism.

Other public information	Support	Integrity	Usage or application; Other authorized entities; Data processed using the nonce		From generation until no longer needed to process data using the public information
Other secret information	Support	Confidentiality; Integrity	Usage or application; Other authorized entities; Data processed using the secret information		From generation until no longer needed to process data using the secret information
Intermediate results	Support	Confidentiality; Integrity	Usage or application		From generation until no longer needed and the intermediate results are destroyed
Key-control information (e.g., IDs, purpose)	Support	Integrity	Key		From generation until the associated key is destroyed
Random number	Support	Integrity; Confidentiality (depends on usage)			From generation until no longer needed, and the random number is destroyed
Password	Source authentication; Key derivation	Integrity; Confidentiality	Usage or application; Owning entity		From generation until replaced or no longer needed to authenticate the entity or to derive keys
Audit information	Support	Integrity; Access authorization	Audited events; Key control information		From generation until no longer needed

## 1887 6.2 Protection Mechanisms

1888 During the lifetime of cryptographic information, the information is either “in transit” (e.g., is  
1889 in the process of being manually distributed or distributed using automated protocols to the  
1890 authorized communication participants for use by those entities), “at rest” (e.g., the information  
1891 is in storage) or “in use.” In all cases, the keying material **shall** be protected in accordance with  
1892 [Section 6.1](#).

1893 For keys that are in use, the keys **shall** reside (and be used) within appropriate cryptographic  
1894 modules; note that a key being in use does not preclude that key from also being  
1895 simultaneously in transit and/or in storage.

1896 While in transit or in storage, the choice of protection mechanisms may vary. Although several  
1897 methods of protection are provided in the following subsections, not all methods provide equal  
1898 security. The method **should** be carefully selected. In addition, the mechanisms prescribed do  
1899 not, by themselves, guarantee protection. The implementation and the associated key

1900 management need to provide adequate security to prevent any feasible attack from being  
 1901 successful.

## 1902 **6.2.1 Protection Mechanisms for Cryptographic Information in Transit**

1903 Cryptographic information in transit may be keying material that is being distributed in order  
 1904 to obtain a cryptographic service (e.g., establish a key that will be used to provide  
 1905 confidentiality) (see [Section 8.1.5](#)), cryptographic information that is being backed up or  
 1906 archived for possible use or recovery in the future (see Sections [8.2.2](#) and [8.3.1](#)), or is in the  
 1907 process of being recovered (see Sections [8.2.2.2](#), [8.3.1](#) and [Appendix B](#)). This may be  
 1908 accomplished manually (i.e., via a trusted courier), in an automated fashion (i.e., using  
 1909 automated communication protocols) or by some combination of manual and automated  
 1910 methods. For some protocols, the protections are provided by the protocol; in other cases, the  
 1911 protection for the keying material is provided directly to the keying material (e.g., the keying  
 1912 material is encrypted prior to transmission for decryption only by the receiving party). It is the  
 1913 responsibility of the originating entity to apply protection mechanisms, and the responsibility  
 1914 of the recipient to undo or check the mechanisms used.

### 1915 **6.2.1.1 Availability**

1916 Since communications may be garbled, intentionally altered, or destroyed, the availability of  
 1917 cryptographic information after transit cannot be assured using cryptographic methods.  
 1918 However, availability can be supported by redundant or multiple channels, store and forward  
 1919 systems (deleting by the sender only after confirmation of receipt), error correction codes, and  
 1920 other non-cryptographic mechanisms.

1921 Communication systems **should** incorporate non-cryptographic mechanisms to ensure the  
 1922 availability of transmitted cryptographic information after it has been successfully received,  
 1923 rather than relying on retransmission by the original sender for future availability

### 1924 **6.2.1.2 Integrity**

1925 Integrity protection involves both the prevention and detection of modifications to information.  
 1926 When modifications are detected, measures may be taken possible to restore the information to  
 1927 its unaltered form. Cryptographic mechanisms are often used to detect unauthorized  
 1928 modifications. The integrity of cryptographic information during transit **shall** be protected  
 1929 using one or more of the following mechanisms:

1930 1. Manual method (physical protection is provided):

1931 (a) An integrity mechanism (e.g., a CRC, MAC or digital signature) is used on the  
 1932 information, and the resulting code is provided to the recipient for subsequent  
 1933 verification. Note: A CRC may be used instead of a MAC or digital signature, since  
 1934 the physical protection is only intended to protect against intentional modifications.

1935 -OR-

1936 (b) The keying material is used to perform the intended cryptographic operation. If the  
 1937 received information does not conform to the expected format, or the data is  
 1938 inconsistent in the context of the application, then the keying material may have  
 1939 been corrupted.

- 1940 2. Automated distribution via communication protocols (provided by the user or by the  
1941 communication protocol):
- 1942 (a) An **approved** cryptographic integrity mechanism (e.g., a MAC or digital signature)  
1943 is used on the information, and the resulting code is provided to the recipient for  
1944 subsequent verification. Note that a CRC is not **approved** for this purpose. The  
1945 integrity mechanism may be applied only to the cryptographic information, or may  
1946 be applied to an entire message
- 1947 -OR-
- 1948 (b) The keying material is used to perform the intended cryptographic operation. If the  
1949 use of the keying material produces incorrect results, or the data is inconsistent in  
1950 the context of the application, then the received keying material may have been  
1951 corrupted.
- 1952 The response to the detection of an integrity failure will vary, depending on the specific  
1953 environment. Improper error handling can allow attacks (e.g., side channel attacks). A security  
1954 policy (see [\[SP800-57, Part 2\]](#)) **should** define the response to such an event. For example, if an  
1955 error is detected in the received information, and the receiver requires that the information is  
1956 entirely correct (e.g., the receiver cannot proceed when the information is in error), then:
- 1957 a. The information **should not** be used,
- 1958 b. The recipient may request that the information be resent (retransmissions **should** be  
1959 limited to a predetermined maximum number of times), and
- 1960 c. Information related to the incident **should** be stored in an audit log to later identify the  
1961 source of the error.
- 1962 **6.2.1.3 Confidentiality**
- 1963 Keying material may require confidentiality protection during transit. If confidentiality  
1964 protection is required, the keying material **shall** be protected using one or more of the  
1965 following mechanisms:
- 1966 1. Manual method:
- 1967 (a) The keying material is encrypted (e.g., wrapped) using an **approved** technique that  
1968 provides protection at a security strength that meets or exceeds the security strength  
1969 required of the keying material.
- 1970 -OR-
- 1971 (b) The keying material is separated into key components, with each key component  
1972 being generated at a security strength that meets or exceeds the security strength  
1973 required of the keying material. Each key component is handled, using split  
1974 knowledge procedures (see Sections [8.1.5.2.1](#) and [8.1.5.2.2.1](#)), so that no single  
1975 individual can acquire access to all key components.
- 1976 -OR-
- 1977 (c) Appropriate physical and procedural protection is provided (e.g., by using a trusted  
1978 courier).

1979 2. Automated distribution via communication protocols: The keying material is encrypted  
 1980 (e.g., wrapped) using an **approved** technique that provides protection at the security  
 1981 strength that meets or exceeds the security strength required of the keying material.

#### 1982 **6.2.1.4 Association with Usage or Application**

1983 The association of keying material with its usage or application **shall** be either specifically  
 1984 identified during the distribution process or be implicitly defined by the use of the application.  
 1985 See [Section 6.2.3](#) for a discussion of the metadata associated with keys.

#### 1986 **6.2.1.5 Association with Other Entities**

1987 The association of keying material with the appropriate entity (e.g., the entity that shares the  
 1988 keying material) **shall** be either specifically identified during the distribution process (e.g.,  
 1989 using public-key certificates) or be implicitly defined by the use of the application. See [Section](#)  
 1990 [6.2.3](#) for a discussion of the metadata associated with keys.

#### 1991 **6.2.1.6 Association with Other Related Information**

1992 Any association with other related information (e.g., domain parameters, the  
 1993 encryption/decryption key or IVs) **shall** be either specifically identified during the distribution  
 1994 process or be implicitly defined by the use of the application. See [Section 6.2.3](#) for a discussion  
 1995 of the metadata associated with the other related information.

### 1996 **6.2.2 Protection Mechanisms for Information in Storage**

1997 Cryptographic information may be at rest in some device or storage media. This may include  
 1998 copies of the information that is also in transit or in use. Information-at-rest (i.e., stored  
 1999 information, including information contained within a cryptographic module) **shall** be  
 2000 protected in accordance with [Section 6.1](#). A variety of protection mechanisms may be used.

2001 The cryptographic information may be stored so as to be immediately available to an  
 2002 application (e.g., on a local hard disk or a server); this would be typical for keying material  
 2003 stored within a cryptographic module or in immediately accessible storage (e.g., on a local hard  
 2004 drive). The keying material may also be stored in electronic form on a removable media (e.g., a  
 2005 CD-ROM), in a remotely accessible location, or in hard copy form and placed in a safe; this  
 2006 would be typical for backup or archive storage.

#### 2007 **6.2.2.1 Availability**

2008 Cryptographic information may need to be readily available for as long as data is protected by  
 2009 the information. A common method for providing this protection is to make one or more copies  
 2010 of the cryptographic information and store them in separate locations. During a key's  
 2011 cryptoperiod, keying material requiring long-term availability **should** be stored in both normal  
 2012 operational storage (see [Section 8.2.1](#)) and in backup storage (see [Section 8.2.2.1](#)).  
 2013 Cryptographic information that is retained after the end of a key's cryptoperiod **should** be  
 2014 placed in archive storage (see [Section 8.3.1](#)). This Recommendation does not preclude the use  
 2015 of the same storage media for both backup and archive storage.

2016 Specifics on the long-term availability requirement for each key type are addressed for backup  
 2017 storage in [Section 8.2.2.1](#), and for archive storage in [Section 8.3.1](#).

2018 The recovery of this cryptographic information for use in replacing cryptographic information  
 2019 that is lost (e.g., from normal storage), or in performing cryptographic operations after the end

2020 of a key's cryptoperiod is discussed in Sections [8.2.2.2](#) (recovery during normal operations)  
 2021 and [8.3.1](#) (recovery from archive storage), and in [Appendix B](#).

#### 2022 **6.2.2.2 Integrity**

2023 Integrity protection is concerned with ensuring that the information is correct. Absolute  
 2024 protection against modification is not possible. The best that can be done is to use reasonable  
 2025 measures to prevent modifications, to use methods to detect any modifications that occur (with  
 2026 a very high probability), and to restore the information to its original content when  
 2027 modifications have been detected.

2028 All cryptographic information requires integrity protection. Integrity protection **shall** be  
 2029 provided by physical mechanisms, cryptographic mechanisms or both.

2030 Physical mechanisms include:

- 2031 1. A validated cryptographic module or operating system that limits access to the stored  
 2032 information,
- 2033 2. A computer system or media that is not connected to other systems,
- 2034 3. A physically secure environment with appropriate access controls that is outside a  
 2035 computer system (e.g., in a safe with limited access).

2036 Cryptographic mechanisms include:

- 2037 a. An **approved** cryptographic integrity mechanism (e.g., a MAC or digital signature) that  
 2038 is computed on the information and is later used to verify the integrity of the stored  
 2039 information.
- 2040 b. Performing the intended cryptographic operation; this assumes that the correct result is  
 2041 easily determined. If the received information is incorrect, it is possible that the keying  
 2042 material may have been corrupted.

2043 In order to restore the cryptographic information when an error is detected, one or more copies  
 2044 of the information **should** be maintained in physically separate locations (i.e., in backup or  
 2045 archive storage; see Sections [8.2.2.1](#) and [8.3.1](#)). The integrity of each copy **should** be  
 2046 periodically checked.

#### 2047 **6.2.2.3 Confidentiality**

2048 One of the following mechanisms **shall** be used to provide confidentiality for private or secret  
 2049 keying material in storage:

- 2050 1. Encryption (or key wrapping) with an **approved** algorithm in a [\[FIPS140\]](#)  
 2051 cryptographic module; the encryption **shall** use an **approved** technique that  
 2052 provides protection at the security strength that meets or exceeds the security  
 2053 strength required of the keying material. It **shall** be no easier to recover the key-  
 2054 wrapping key) than it is to recover the key being encrypted (or wrapped),

2055 -OR-

- 2056 2. Physical protection provided by a [\[FIPS140\]](#) cryptographic module, at a security  
 2057 level that is consistent with the [\[FIPS199\]](#) impact level associated with the data to  
 2058 be protected by the key (see [\[SP800-152\]](#)).

2059 -OR-

2060 3. Physical protection provided by secure storage with controlled access (e.g., a safe or  
2061 protected area).

#### 2062 **6.2.2.4 Association with Usage or Application**

2063 Cryptographic information is used with a given cryptographic mechanism (e.g., digital  
2064 signatures or a key establishment scheme) or with a particular application. Protection **shall** be  
2065 provided to ensure that the information is not used incorrectly (e.g., not only must the usage or  
2066 application be associated with the keying material, but the integrity of this association must be  
2067 maintained). This protection can be provided by separating the cryptographic information from  
2068 that of other mechanisms or applications, or by the use of appropriate metadata associated with  
2069 the information. [Section 6.2.3](#) addresses the metadata associated with cryptographic  
2070 information.

#### 2071 **6.2.2.5 Association with the Other Entities**

2072 Some cryptographic information needs to be correctly associated with another entity (e.g., the  
2073 key source), and the integrity of this association **shall** be maintained. For example, a symmetric  
2074 (secret) key used for the encryption of information, or the computation of a MAC needs to be  
2075 associated with the other entity(ies) that share(s) the key. Public keys need to be correctly  
2076 associated (e.g., cryptographically bound) with the owner of the key pair (e.g., using public-  
2077 key certificates).

2078 The cryptographic information **shall** retain its association during storage by separating the  
2079 information by “entity” or application, or by using appropriate metadata for the information.  
2080 [Section 6.2.3](#) addresses the metadata used for cryptographic information.

#### 2081 **6.2.2.6 Association with Other Related Information**

2082 An association may need to be maintained between protected information and the keying  
2083 material that protected that information. In addition, keys may require association with other  
2084 keying material (see [Section 6.2.1.6](#)).

2085 Storing the information together or providing some linkage or pointer between the information  
2086 accomplishes the association. Often, the linkage between a key and the information it protects  
2087 is accomplished by providing an identifier for a key, storing the identifier with the key in the  
2088 key’s metadata, and storing the key’s identifier with the protected information. The association  
2089 **shall** be maintained for as long as the protected information needs to be processed.

2090 [Section 6.2.3](#) addresses the use of metadata for cryptographic information.

### 2091 **6.2.3 Metadata Associated with Cryptographic Information**

2092 Metadata may be used with cryptographic information to define the use of that information or  
2093 to provide a linkage between cryptographic information.

#### 2094 **6.2.3.1 Metadata for Keys**

2095 Metadata is used to provide information about the key, including its parameters, or the  
2096 intended use of a key, and as such, contains the key’s control information. Different  
2097 applications may require different metadata elements for the same key type, and different  
2098 metadata elements may be required for different key types. It is the responsibility of an

2099 implementer to select suitable metadata elements for keys. When metadata is used, the  
 2100 metadata **should** accompany a key (i.e., the metadata is typically stored or transmitted with a  
 2101 key). Some examples of metadata elements are:

- 2102 1. Key identifier;
- 2103 2. Information identifying associated keys (e.g., the association between a public and  
 2104 private key);
- 2105 3. Identity of the key's owner or the sharing entity(ies);
- 2106 4. Cryptoperiod (e.g., the start date and end date);
- 2107 5. Key type (e.g., a signing private key, encryption key, or master key);
- 2108 6. Application (e.g., purchasing, email);
- 2109 7. Sensitivity of the information protected by the key;
- 2110 8. Counter<sup>35</sup>;
- 2111 9. Domain parameters (e.g., the domain parameters used by DSA or ECDSA, or a pointer  
 2112 to them);
- 2113 10. Key state (e.g., pre-activation, active, destroyed);
- 2114 11. Key status/history (e.g., distributed, revoked (with the revocation reason));
- 2115 12. Key-wrapping key identifier and the algorithm used for wrapping;
- 2116 13. Integrity-protection mechanism (e.g., the key and algorithm used to provide  
 2117 cryptographic protection, and the protection code (e.g., MAC, digital signature)); and
- 2118 14. Other information (e.g., the length of the key, any protection requirements, who has  
 2119 access rights to the key, additional conditions for use).

2120 [\[SP800-152\]](#) provides additional information about the use of metadata, including guidance  
 2121 about protecting its integrity and association with the related key.

### 2122 **6.2.3.2 Metadata for Related Cryptographic Information**

2123 Cryptographic information other than keying material may need metadata to “point to” the  
 2124 keying material that was used to provide the cryptographic protection for the information. The  
 2125 metadata may also contain other related cryptographic information. When metadata is used, the  
 2126 metadata **should** accompany the information (i.e., the metadata is typically stored or  
 2127 transmitted with the information) and contain some subset of the following information:

- 2128 1. The type of information (e.g., domain parameters);
- 2129 2. The source of the information (e.g., the entity that sent the information);
- 2130 3. The application for using the key (e.g., purchasing, email);
- 2131 4. Other associated cryptographic information (e.g., a key, MAC or hash value); and
- 2132 5. Any other information (e.g., who has access rights).

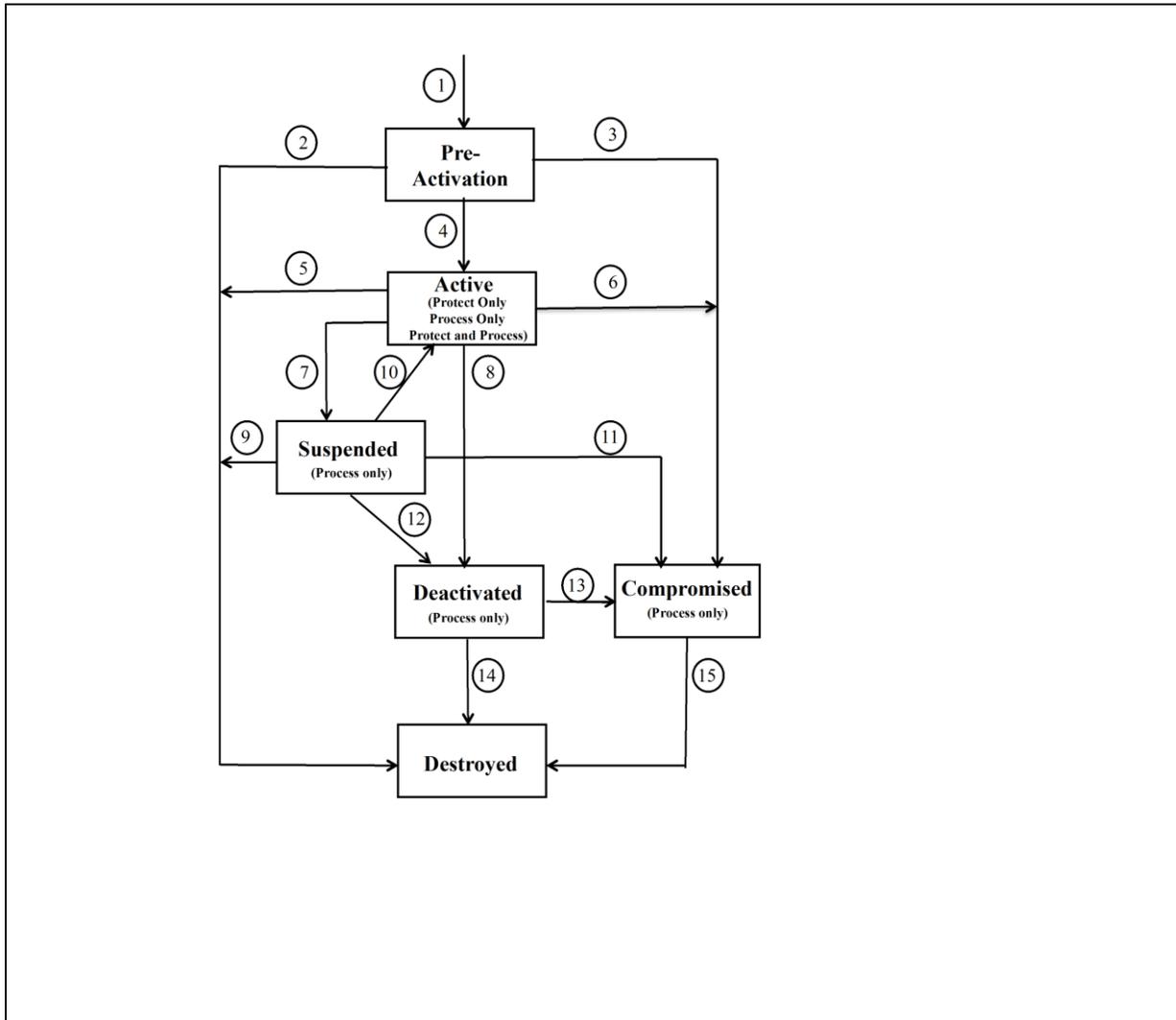
---

<sup>35</sup> Used to detect the playback of a previously transmitted key package.

2133 **7 Key States and Transitions**

2134 **[Note to the reviewer: Please review this section carefully to see if it makes sense and is**  
 2135 **clear.]**

2136 A key may pass through several states between its generation and its destruction. [Figure 3](#)  
 2137 depicts an example of the key states that a key could assume and the transitions among them.



**Figure 3: Key states and transitions.**

2138 A key is used differently, depending upon its state in the key's lifecycle. Key states are defined  
 2139 from a system point-of-view, as opposed to the point-of-view of a single cryptographic  
 2140 module. The following sections discuss the states that an operational or backed-up key may  
 2141 assume, along with transitions to other states, as shown in [Figure 3](#). Additional states may be  
 2142 applicable for some systems, and some of the identified states may not be needed for other  
 2143 systems (e.g., if keys are to be activated immediately after generation, the pre-activation state  
 2144 may not be needed, or a decision could be made that the suspended state will not be used).

2145 Transitioning between states often requires recording the event. Suitable places for such  
 2146 recordings are audit logs and the key's metadata (see [Section 6.2.3.1](#)). [\[SP800-152\]](#) also  
 2147 discusses the logging of these events.

## 2148 **7.1 Pre-activation State**

2149 The key has been generated, but has not been authorized for use. In this state, the key may only  
 2150 be used to perform proof-of-possession or key confirmation. Other than for proof-of-  
 2151 possession ([Section 8.1.5.1.1.2](#)) or key-confirmation ([Section 4.2.5.5](#)) purposes, a key **shall not**  
 2152 be used to apply cryptographic protection to information (e.g., encrypt or sign information to  
 2153 be transmitted or stored) or to process cryptographically protected information (e.g., decrypt  
 2154 ciphertext or verify a digital signature) while in this state.

2155 Transition 1: A key enters the pre-activation state immediately upon generation.

2156 Transition 2: If a key is in the pre-activation state, and it has been determined that the key  
 2157 will not be needed in the future, the key **shall** transition directly from the pre-  
 2158 activation state to the destroyed state.

2159 In the case of asymmetric keys, both keys of the key pair **shall** transition to the  
 2160 destroyed state.

2161 The date and time of the transition **shall** be recorded.

2162 Transition 3: When a key is in the pre-activation state, and the integrity of the key or the  
 2163 confidentiality of a key requiring confidentiality protection becomes suspect,  
 2164 then the key **shall** transition from the pre-activation state to the compromised  
 2165 state.

2166 In the case of asymmetric keys, both keys of the key pair **shall** transition to the  
 2167 compromised state.

2168 The date and time of the transition **shall** be recorded. If the key is known by  
 2169 multiple entities, a revocation notice **shall** be generated.

2170 Transition 4: Keys **shall** transition from the pre-activation state to the active state when the  
 2171 key becomes available for use. This transition may occur upon reaching an  
 2172 activation date or may occur because of an external event. In the case where  
 2173 keys are generated for immediate use, this transition occurs immediately after  
 2174 entering the pre-activation state.

2175 For certified asymmetric keys, both keys of the key pair become active upon the  
 2176 *notBefore* date in the first certificate issued for the public key of the key pair.

2177 The date and time of the transition **should** be recorded.

2178 This transition marks the beginning of the cryptoperiod of a symmetric key or  
 2179 both keys of an asymmetric key pair (see [Section 5.3](#)).

## 2180 **7.2 Active State**

2181 The key may be used to cryptographically protect information (e.g., encrypt plaintext or  
 2182 generate a digital signature), to cryptographically process previously protected information  
 2183 (e.g., decrypt ciphertext or verify a digital signature) or both. When a key is active, it may be  
 2184 designated for protection only, processing only, or both protection and processing, depending

2185 on its type. For example, private signature keys and public key-transport keys are implicitly  
 2186 designated for only applying protection; public signature-verification keys and private key-  
 2187 transport keys are designated for processing only. A symmetric data-encryption key may be  
 2188 used to encrypt data during its originator-usage period and decrypt the encrypted data during  
 2189 its recipient-usage period (see [Section 5.3.5](#)).

2190 Transition 5: Several key types transition directly from the active state to the destroyed state  
 2191 if no compromise has been determined and either the key's cryptoperiod has  
 2192 been reached or the key has been replaced.

2193 Private signature keys and private authentication keys **shall** transition to the  
 2194 destroyed state at the end of their respective originator-usage periods (e.g.,  
 2195 when the *notAfter* dates are reached on the last certificate issued for the  
 2196 corresponding public keys). Note that the corresponding public keys transition  
 2197 to the deactivated state at this time; see transition 8.

2198 A symmetric RBG key **shall** transition to the destroyed state when replaced by a  
 2199 new key or when the RBG will no longer be used.

2200 Symmetric master keys and symmetric authorization keys **shall** transition to the  
 2201 destroyed state at the end of their respective originator-usage periods<sup>36</sup>.

2202 Private ephemeral key-agreement keys **shall** transition to the destroyed state  
 2203 immediately after use (see [\[SP800-56A\]](#)). The corresponding public ephemeral  
 2204 key-agreement keys **should** transition to the destroyed state when the  
 2205 corresponding private keys are destroyed<sup>37</sup>.

2206 A private authorization key **shall** transition to the destroyed state at the end of  
 2207 its cryptoperiod (e.g., when the *notAfter* dates is reached on the last certificate  
 2208 issued for the corresponding public key). A public authorization key **should**  
 2209 transition to the destroyed state when the corresponding private key is  
 2210 destroyed<sup>38</sup>.

2211 The date and time of the transition **shall** be recorded.

2212 Transition 6: A key or key pair **shall** transition from the active state to the compromised state  
 2213 when the integrity of the key or the confidentiality of a key requiring  
 2214 confidentiality protection becomes suspect. In this case, the key or key pair  
 2215 **shall** be revoked.

2216 In the case of asymmetric key pairs, the compromise pertains explicitly to the  
 2217 private key of the key pair, but both keys **shall** transition to the compromised  
 2218 state. For example, when a private signature key or private key-transport key is  
 2219 either compromised or suspected of being compromised, the corresponding  
 2220 public key also needs to transition to the compromised state.

---

<sup>36</sup> Recall that the recipient-usage periods of symmetric key-agreement keys and symmetric authorization keys are the same as their originator-usage periods (see [Section 5.6](#)).

<sup>37</sup> Recall that the cryptoperiods of the private and public authorization keys are the same (see [Section 5.6](#)).

<sup>38</sup> Recall that the cryptoperiods of the private and public authorization keys are the same (see [Section 5.6](#)).

2221 The date and time of the transition **shall** be recorded. If the key is known by  
 2222 multiple entities, a revocation notice **shall** be generated.

2223 Transaction 7: A key or key pair **shall** transition from the active state to the suspended state if,  
 2224 for some reason, the key is not to be used for a period of time. For example, a  
 2225 key may be suspended because the entity associated with the key is on a leave  
 2226 of absence.

2227 In the case of asymmetric keys, both keys of the key pair **shall** transition to the  
 2228 suspended state at the same time.

2229 Symmetric RBG keys **shall** transition to the compromised state and be replaced,  
 2230 rather than suspended.

2231 The date, time and reason for the suspension **shall** be recorded. If the key or key  
 2232 pair is known by multiple entities, a notification indicating the suspension and  
 2233 reason **shall** be generated.

2234 Transition 8: A key or key pair in the active state **shall** transition to the deactivated state  
 2235 when it is no longer to be used to apply cryptographic protection to data. The  
 2236 transition to the deactivated state may be because a symmetric key was replaced  
 2237 (see [Section 8.2.3](#)), because the end of the originator-usage cryptoperiod has  
 2238 been reached (see Sections [5.3.4](#) and [5.3.5](#)) or because the key or key pair was  
 2239 revoked for reasons other than a compromise (e.g., the key's owner is no longer  
 2240 authorized to use the key).

2241 Symmetric authentication keys, symmetric data encryption/decryption keys,  
 2242 symmetric key-agreement keys and key wrapping keys transition to the  
 2243 deactivated state at the end of the key's originator-usage period.

2244 Public signature verification keys, public authentication keys, and private/public  
 2245 static key-agreement key pairs, transition to the deactivated state at the end of  
 2246 the originator-usage period for the corresponding private key (e.g., when the  
 2247 *notAfter* date is reached on the last certificate issued for the public key). Public  
 2248 ephemeral key-agreement keys and public authorization keys transition to the  
 2249 deactivated state if they have not been destroyed when the corresponding  
 2250 private keys were destroyed (see transition 5).

2251 A private and public key-transport key pair transitions to the deactivated state  
 2252 when the *notAfter* date is reached on the last certificate issued for the public  
 2253 key.

2254 The date and time of the transition **should** be recorded.

### 2255 **7.3 Suspended State**

2256 The use of a key or key pair may be suspended for several possible reasons; in the case of  
 2257 asymmetric key pairs, both the public and private keys **shall** be suspended at the same time.  
 2258 One reason for a suspension might be a possible key compromise, and the suspension has been  
 2259 issued to allow time to investigate the situation. Another reason might be that the entity that  
 2260 owns a digital signature key pair is not available (e.g., is on an extended leave of absence);  
 2261 signatures purportedly signed during the suspension time would be invalid.

- 2262 A suspended key or key pair may be restored to an active state at a later time or may be  
2263 deactivated or destroyed, or may transition to the compromised state.
- 2264 A suspended key **shall not** be used to apply cryptographic protection (e.g., encrypt plaintext or  
2265 generate a digital signature). However, a suspended key could be used to process information  
2266 that was protected prior to the suspension (e.g., decrypt ciphertext or verify a digital signature),  
2267 but the recipient must accept the risk in doing so (e.g., the recipient must understand the reason  
2268 and implications of the suspension). For example, if the reason for the suspension is because of  
2269 a suspected compromise, it may not be prudent to verify signatures using the public key unless  
2270 the key pair is subsequently reactivated. Information for which protection is known to be  
2271 applied during the suspension period **shall not** be processed until leaving the suspended state,  
2272 at which time its processing depends on the new state.
- 2273 Transition 9: Several key types transition from the suspended state to the destroyed state if no  
2274 compromise has been determined.
- 2275 Private signature keys and private authentication keys in the suspended state  
2276 **shall** transition to the destroyed state at the end of their originator-usage periods  
2277 (e.g., when the *notAfter* dates are reached on the last certificate issued for the  
2278 corresponding public keys). Note that the corresponding public keys transition  
2279 to the deactivated state at this time (see transition 12).
- 2280 Symmetric master keys and symmetric authorization keys in the suspended state  
2281 **shall** transition to the destroyed state at the end of their originator-usage  
2282 periods<sup>39</sup>.
- 2283 Private authorization keys in the suspended state **shall** transition to the  
2284 destroyed state at the end of their originator-usage periods (i.e., when the  
2285 *notAfter* dates are reached on the last certificate issued for the corresponding  
2286 public keys). Public authorization keys **should** transition to the destroyed state  
2287 when the corresponding private keys are destroyed<sup>40</sup>.
- 2288 The date and time of the transition **shall** be recorded.
- 2289 Transition 10: A key or key pair in the suspended state **shall** transition to the active state when  
2290 the reason for the suspension no longer exists, and the end of the originator-  
2291 usage period has not been reached.
- 2292 In the case of symmetric keys, the transition needs to be made before the end of  
2293 the key's originator-usage period.
- 2294 For asymmetric keys, the transition needs to be made, for example, before the  
2295 *notAfter* date on the last certificate issued for the public key. In this case, both  
2296 the private and public key **shall** transition at the same time.
- 2297 The date and time of the transition **should** be recorded.

---

<sup>39</sup> Recall that the recipient-usage periods of symmetric key-agreement keys and symmetric authorization keys are the same as their originator-usage periods (see Section 5.3.6).

<sup>40</sup> Recall that the cryptoperiods of the private and public authorization keys are the same (see Section 5.6).

2298 Transition 11: A key or key pair in the suspended state **shall** transition to the compromised  
 2299 state when the integrity of the key or the confidentiality of a key requiring  
 2300 confidentiality protection becomes suspect. In this case, the key or key pair  
 2301 **shall** be revoked.

2302 In the case of asymmetric key pairs, both the public and private keys **shall** be  
 2303 transition at the same time.

2304 The date and time of the transition **shall** be recorded. If the key is known by  
 2305 multiple entities, a revocation notice **shall** be generated.

2306 Transition 12: Several key types transition from the suspended state to the deactivated state if  
 2307 no compromise has been determined and the suspension is no longer required.

2308 Symmetric authentication keys, symmetric data encryption/decryption keys, and  
 2309 symmetric key-wrapping keys **shall** transition to the deactivated state when the  
 2310 ends of their originator-usage periods have been reached.

2311 Public signature verification keys, public authentication keys, and private/public  
 2312 static key-agreement key pairs<sup>41</sup> transition to the deactivated state at the end of  
 2313 the private key's originator-usage period (e.g., when the *notAfter* date is reached  
 2314 on the last certificate issued for the public key). Public ephemeral key-  
 2315 agreement keys and public authorization keys transition to the deactivated state  
 2316 if they have not been destroyed when the corresponding private keys were  
 2317 destroyed (see transition 9).

2318 A private/public key-transport key pair transitions to the deactivated state at the  
 2319 end of the key pair's cryptoperiod (e.g., when the *notAfter* date is reached on the  
 2320 last certificate issued for the public key).

2321 The date and time of the transition **should** be recorded.

#### 2322 7.4 Deactivated State

2323 Keys in the deactivated state **shall not** be used to apply cryptographic protection, but in some  
 2324 cases, may be used to process cryptographically protected information. If the key has been  
 2325 revoked (i.e., for reasons other than a compromise), then the key may continue to be used for  
 2326 processing. Note that keys retrieved from an archive can be considered to be in the deactivated  
 2327 state unless compromised.

2328 • Public signature verification keys may be used to verify the digital signatures generated  
 2329 before the end of the private key's originator-usage period (e.g., before the *notAfter* date  
 2330 in the last certificate for the public key).

2331 • Symmetric authentication keys, symmetric data encryption keys and symmetric key-  
 2332 wrapping keys may be used to process cryptographically protected information until the

---

<sup>41</sup> In the case of public ephemeral key-agreement keys, the cryptoperiod ends at the same time as that of the corresponding private ephemeral key-agreement key (which transitioned to the destroyed state after use (see transition 5)). However, there is no actual requirement to destroy the public key immediately, so it is listed here as transitioning to the deactivated state, rather than the destroyed state. However, transitioning directly to the destroyed state would also be acceptable.

2333 end of the recipient-usage period is reached, provided that the protection was applied  
2334 during the key's originator-usage period.

2335 • Public authentication keys may be used to authenticate processes performed before the  
2336 end of the corresponding private key's originator-usage period (e.g., before the *notAfter*  
2337 date in the last certificate for the public key).

2338 • Private key-transport keys may be used to decrypt keys that were encrypted using the  
2339 corresponding public key before the end of the public key's originator-usage period  
2340 (e.g., before the *notAfter* date in the last certificate for the public key).

2341 • Symmetric key-agreement keys may be used to determine the agreed-upon key,  
2342 assuming that sufficient information is available.

2343 • Private/public static key-agreement keys may be used to regenerate agreed-upon keys  
2344 that were created before the end of the key pair's cryptoperiod (e.g., before the *notAfter*  
2345 date in the last certificate for the public key, assuming that sufficient information is  
2346 available for the key-agreement scheme used).

2347 • Public ephemeral key-agreement keys may be used to regenerate agreed-upon keys  
2348 (assuming that sufficient information is available for the key-agreement scheme used).

2349 • Public authorization keys **shall not** be used.

2350 Keys in the deactivated state may transition to either the compromised or destroyed state at  
2351 some point in time.

2352 Transition 13: A key **shall** transition from the deactivated state to the compromised state when  
2353 the integrity of a key or the confidentiality of a key requiring confidentiality  
2354 protection becomes suspect. In this case, the key or key pair **shall** be revoked.

2355 The date, time and reason for the transition **shall** be recorded. If the key is  
2356 known by multiple entities, a revocation notice **shall** be generated.

2357 Transition 14: A key in the deactivated state **should** transition to the destroyed state as soon as  
2358 it is no longer needed.

2359 The date, time and reason for the transition **shall** be recorded.

2360 Note that keys retrieved from an archive may be in the deactivated state.

## 2361 **7.5 Compromised State**

2362 Generally, keys are compromised when they are released to or determined by an unauthorized  
2363 entity. A compromised key **shall not** be used to apply cryptographic protection to information.  
2364 However, in some cases, a compromised key or a public key that corresponds to a  
2365 compromised private key of a key pair may be used to process cryptographically protected  
2366 information. For example, a signature may be verified to determine the integrity of signed data  
2367 if its signature has been physically protected since a time before the compromise occurred.  
2368 This processing **shall** be done only under very highly controlled conditions, where the users of  
2369 the information are fully aware of the possible consequences.

2370 Note that keys retrieved from an archive may be in the compromised state.

2371 Transition 15: A compromised key **should** transition to the destroyed state when its use will no  
 2372 longer be allowed or needed.

2373 The date and time of the transition **shall** be recorded.

## 2374 7.6 Destroyed State

2375 The key has been destroyed as specified in [Section 8.3.4](#). Even though the key no longer exists  
 2376 when in this state, certain key metadata (e.g., key state transition history, key name, type, and  
 2377 cryptoperiod) may be retained (see [Section 8.4](#)).

2378 It is possible that a compromise of the destroyed key could be determined after the key has  
 2379 been destroyed. In this case, the compromise **should** be recorded.

## 2380 8 Key-Management Phases and Functions

2381 The cryptographic key-management lifecycle can be divided into four phases. During each  
 2382 phase, the keys are in certain specific key states as discussed in [Section 7](#). In addition, within  
 2383 each phase, certain key-management functions are typically performed. These functions are  
 2384 necessary for the management of the keys and their associated metadata.

2385 Key-management information is called metadata. The metadata required for key management  
 2386 might include the identity of a person or system associated with that key or the types of  
 2387 information that person is authorized to access. Metadata is used by applications to select the  
 2388 appropriate cryptographic key(s) for a particular service. While the metadata does not appear in  
 2389 cryptographic algorithms, it is crucial to the implementation of applications and application  
 2390 protocols.

2391 The four phases of key management are specified below.

2392 1. **Pre-operational phase:** The keying material is not yet available for normal  
 2393 cryptographic operations. Keys may not yet be generated, or are in the pre-activation  
 2394 state. System or enterprise attributes are established during this phase, as well.

2395 2. **Operational phase:** The keying material is available and in normal use. Keys are in the  
 2396 active, suspended or deactivated state. Keys in the active state may be designated as  
 2397 protect only, process only, or protect and process; keys in the suspended or deactivated  
 2398 state can be used for processing only.

2399 3. **Post-operational phase:** The keying material is no longer in normal use, but access to  
 2400 the keying material is possible, and the keying material may be used for processing  
 2401 only in certain circumstances. Keys are in the deactivated or compromised states. Keys  
 2402 in the post-operational phase may be in an archive (see [Section 8.3.1](#)) when not  
 2403 processing data.

2404 4. **Destroyed phase:** Keys are no longer available. Records of their existence may or may  
 2405 not have been deleted. Keys are in the destroyed states. Although the keys themselves  
 2406 are destroyed, the key metadata (e.g., key name, type, cryptoperiod, and usage period)  
 2407 may be retained (see [Section 8.4](#)).

2408 A flow diagram for the key management phases is presented in [Figure 4](#). Seven phase  
 2409 transitions are identified in the diagram. A key **shall not** be able to transfer back to any  
 2410 previous phase.

2411 Transition 1: A key is in the pre-  
 2412 operational phase upon generation  
 2413 (pre-activation state).

2414 Transition 2: If keys are produced, but  
 2415 never used, they may be destroyed  
 2416 by transitioning from the pre-  
 2417 operational phase directly to the  
 2418 destroyed phase.

2419 Transition 3: When a key in the pre-  
 2420 operational phase is compromised, it  
 2421 transitions to the post-operational  
 2422 phase (compromised state).

2423 Transition 4: After the required key  
 2424 metadata has been established,  
 2425 keying material has been generated,  
 2426 and the metadata is associated with  
 2427 the key during the pre-operational  
 2428 phase, the key is ready to be used by  
 2429 applications and transitions to the  
 2430 operational phase at the appropriate  
 2431 time.

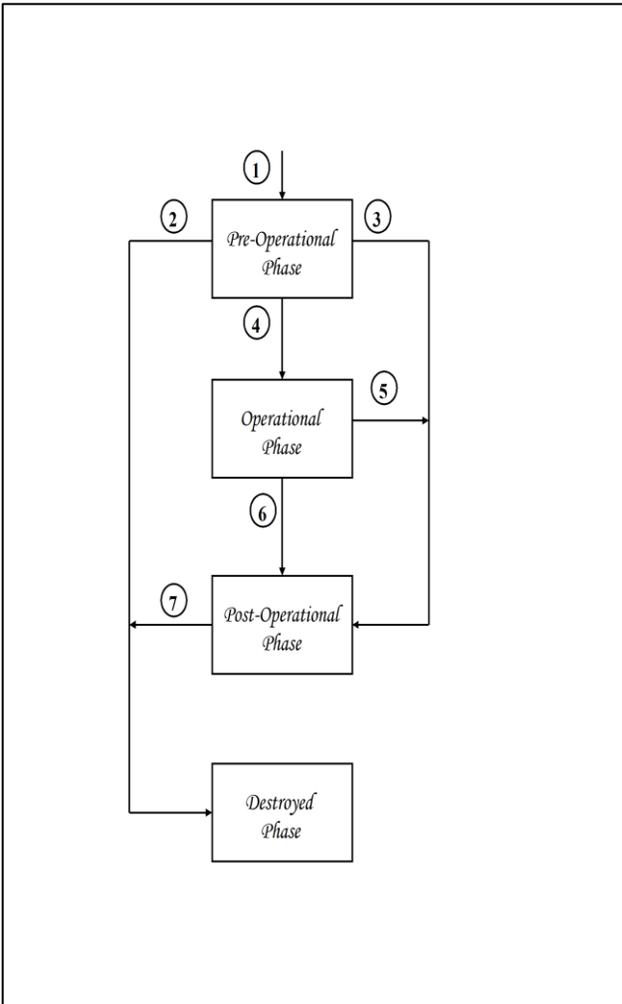
2432 Transition 5: When a key in the  
 2433 operational phase is compromised, it  
 2434 transitions to the post-operational  
 2435 phase (compromised state).

2436 Transition 6: When keys are no longer  
 2437 required for normal use (i.e., the end  
 2438 of the cryptoperiod has been reached and the key is no longer “active”), but access to  
 2439 those keys needs to be maintained, the key transitions to the post-operational phase.

2440 Transition 7: Some applications will require that access be preserved for a period of time,  
 2441 and then the keying material may be destroyed. When it is clear that a key in the post-  
 2442 operational phase is no longer needed, it may transition to the destroyed phase.

2443 The combination of key states and key phases is illustrated in [Figure 5](#). The pre-operational  
 2444 and destroyed phases contain only one state each, while the operational and post-operational  
 2445 phase have two states.

2446 The following subsections discuss the functions that are performed in each phase of key  
 2447 management. A key-management system may not have all identified functions, since some  
 2448 functions may not be appropriate. In some cases, one or more functions may be combined, or  
 2449 the functions may be performed in a different order. For example, a system may omit the  
 2450 functions of the post-operational phase if keys are immediately destroyed when they are no



**Figure 4: Key management phases**

2451 longer used to apply cryptographic  
 2452 protection or are compromised. In this  
 2453 case, keys would move from the  
 2454 operational phase directly to the  
 2455 destroyed phase.

## 2456 8.1 Pre-operational Phase

2457 During the pre-operational phase of key  
 2458 management, keying material is not yet  
 2459 available for normal cryptographic  
 2460 operations.

### 2461 8.1.1 User Registration Function

2462 During user registration, an entity  
 2463 interacts with a registration authority to  
 2464 become an authorized member of a  
 2465 security domain. In this phase, a user  
 2466 identifier or device name may be  
 2467 established to identify the member  
 2468 during future transactions. In particular,  
 2469 security infrastructures may associate  
 2470 the identification information with the  
 2471 entity's keys (see Sections [8.1.5](#) and  
 2472 [8.1.6](#)). The entity may also establish various information during the registration function, such  
 2473 as email addresses, or role and authorization information. As with identity information, this  
 2474 information may be associated with the entity's keys by the infrastructure to support secure  
 2475 application-level security services.

2476 Since applications will depend upon the identity established during this process, it is crucial  
 2477 that the registration authority establish appropriate procedures for the validation of identity.  
 2478 Identity may be established through an in-person appearance at a registration authority, or may  
 2479 be established entirely out-of-band. Human entities are usually required to provide credentials  
 2480 (e.g., an identification card or birth certificate), while system entities are vouched for by those  
 2481 individuals responsible for system operation. The strength (or weakness) of a security  
 2482 infrastructure will often depend upon the identification process.

2483 User and key registration (see [Section 8.1.6](#)) may be performed separately, or in concert. If  
 2484 performed separately, the user registration process will generally establish a secret value (e.g.,  
 2485 a password, PIN, or HMAC key); the secret value may be used to authenticate the user's  
 2486 identity during the key registration step. If performed in concert, the user establishes an  
 2487 identity and performs key registration in the same process, so the secret value is not required.

### 2488 8.1.2 System Initialization Function

2489 System initialization involves setting up or configuring a system for secure operation. This  
 2490 may include algorithm preferences, the identification of trusted parties, and the definition of  
 2491 domain-parameter policies and any trusted parameters (e.g., recognized certificate policies).

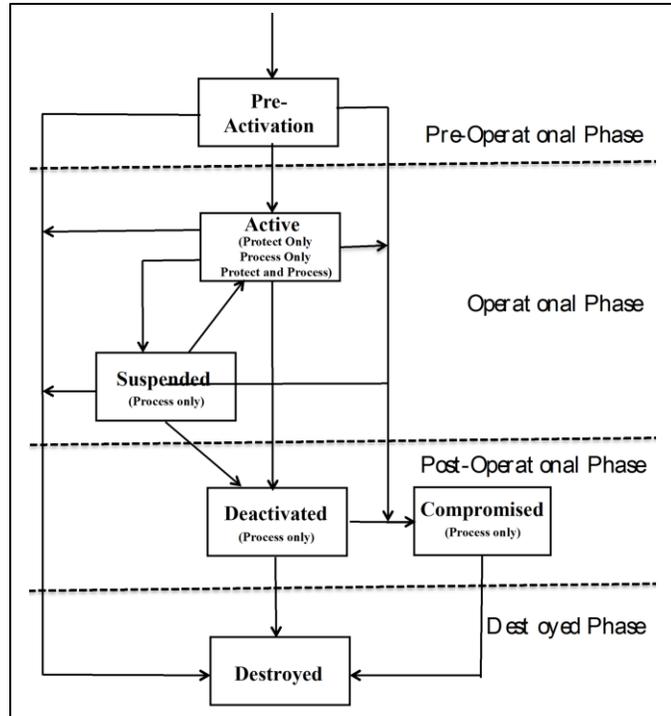


Figure 5: Key management states and phases

2492 **8.1.3 User Initialization Function**

2493 User initialization consists of an entity initializing its cryptographic application (e.g., installing  
2494 and initializing software or hardware). This involves the use or installation (see [Section 8.1.4](#))  
2495 of the initial keying material that may be obtained during user registration. Examples include  
2496 the installation of a key at a CA, trust parameters, policies, trusted parties, and algorithm  
2497 preferences.

2498 **8.1.4 Keying-Material Installation Function**

2499 The security of keying-material installation is crucial to the security of a system. For this  
2500 function, keying material is installed for operational use within an entity's software, hardware,  
2501 system, application, cryptographic module, or device using a variety of techniques. Keying  
2502 material is installed during initial set up, when new keying material is added to the existing  
2503 keying material, and when existing keying material is replaced (e.g., via re-keying or key  
2504 derivation – see Sections [8.2.3](#) and [8.2.4](#)).

2505 The process for the initial installation of keying material (e.g., by manual entry, electronic key  
2506 loader, or a vendor during manufacture) **shall** include the protection of the keying material  
2507 during entry into a software/hardware/system/application/device/cryptographic module, taking  
2508 into account the requirements of [\[FIPS140\]](#) and its differing requirements for the different  
2509 levels of protection, and include any additional procedures that may be required.

2510 Many applications or systems are provided by the manufacturer with keying material that is  
2511 used to test that the newly installed application/system is functioning properly. This test keying  
2512 material **shall not** be used operationally.

2513 **8.1.5 Key Establishment Function**

2514 Key establishment involves the generation and distribution, or the agreement of keying  
2515 material for communication between entities. All keys **shall** be generated within a FIPS140-  
2516 validated cryptographic module or obtained from another source approved by the U.S.  
2517 Government for the protection of national security information. During the key-establishment  
2518 process, some of the keying material may be in transit (i.e., the keying material is being  
2519 manually distributed or is being distributed using automated protocols). Other keying material  
2520 may be retained locally. In either case, the keying material **shall** be protected in accordance  
2521 with [Section 6](#).

2522 An entity may be an individual (person), organization, device or process. When keying  
2523 material is generated by an entity for its own use, one or more of the appropriate protection  
2524 mechanisms for stored information in [Section 6.2.2](#) **shall** be used.

2525 Keying material that is distributed between entities, or among an entity and its sub-entities  
2526 (e.g., various individuals, devices or processes within an organization), **shall** be protected  
2527 during distribution using one or more of the appropriate protection mechanisms specified in  
2528 [Section 6.2.1](#). Any keying material that is not distributed (e.g., the private key of a key pair, or  
2529 one's own copy of a symmetric key) or keying material that is received and subsequently stored  
2530 **shall** be protected using one or more of the appropriate protection mechanisms specified in  
2531 [Section 6.2.2](#).

2532 [\[SP800-133\]](#) discusses the generation of keying material.

### 2533 **8.1.5.1 Generation and Distribution of Asymmetric Key Pairs**

2534 Key pairs **shall** be generated in accordance with the mathematical specifications of the  
2535 appropriate **approved** FIPS or NIST Recommendation.

2536 A static key pair **shall** be generated by the entity that “owns” the key pair (i.e., the entity that  
2537 uses the private key in the cryptographic computations), or by a facility that distributes the key  
2538 pair in accordance with [Section 8.1.5.1.3](#), or by the user and facility in a cooperative process.  
2539 When generated by the entity that owns the key pair, a signing private key **shall not** be  
2540 distributed to other entities. In the case of a public signature-verification key and its associated  
2541 private key, the owner **should** generate the keying material, rather than any other entity  
2542 generating the keying material for that owner; this will facilitate the support for non-  
2543 repudiation. However, when the owner is an organization, it is acceptable to distribute the  
2544 keying material to the organization's sub-entities (e.g., employees or devices); in this case, the  
2545 organization is the true owner, and the sub-entities represent the owner.

2546 Ephemeral keys are often used for key establishment (see [\[SP800-56A\]](#)). They are generated  
2547 for each new key-establishment transaction (e.g., unique to each message or session).

2548 The generated key pairs **shall** be protected in accordance with [Section 6.1.1](#).

#### 2549 **8.1.5.1.1 Distribution of Static Public Keys**

2550 Static public keys are relatively long-lived and are typically used for a number of executions of  
2551 an algorithm. The distribution of the public key **should** provide assurance to the receiver of the  
2552 public key that the true owner of the key is known (i.e., the claimed owner is the actual owner);  
2553 this requirement may be disregarded if anonymity is acceptable. However, the strength of the  
2554 overall architecture and trust in the validity of the protected data depends, in large part, on the  
2555 assurance of the public-key owner’s identity.

2556 In addition, the distribution of the public key **shall** provide assurance to the receiver that:

- 2557 1. The purpose/usage of the key is known (e.g., for RSA digital signatures or elliptic-  
2558 curve key agreement),
- 2559 2. Any parameters associated with the public key are known (e.g., domain parameters),
- 2560 3. The public key is valid (e.g., the public key satisfies the required arithmetical  
2561 properties), and
- 2562 4. The owner actually possesses the corresponding private key.

#### 2563 **8.1.5.1.1.1 Distribution of a Trust Anchor's Public Key in a PKI**

2564 The public key of a trusted Certification Authority is the foundation for all PKI-based security  
2565 services; the trusted CA is considered to be a trust anchor. The trust anchor's public key is not a  
2566 secret, but the *authenticity* of that public key is the crucial assumption for PKI. Trust anchor  
2567 public keys may be obtained through many different mechanisms, providing different levels of  
2568 assurance. The types of mechanisms that are provided may depend on the role of the user in the  
2569 infrastructure. A user that is only a “relying party” – that is, a user that does not have keys  
2570 registered with the infrastructure – may use different mechanisms than a user that possesses  
2571 keys registered by the infrastructure.

2572 Trust anchor public keys are frequently distributed as "self-signed" X.509 certificates, that is,  
 2573 certificates that are signed by the private key corresponding to the public key in the certificate.  
 2574 Note that, while this document refers to a trusted CA as the "trust anchor" and its certificate as  
 2575 the "trust anchor certificate," many other documents use the term "trust anchor" to refer to both  
 2576 the trusted CA and the CA's certificate.

2577 Trust anchor certificates are often embedded within an application and distributed with the  
 2578 application. For example, the installation of a new web browser typically includes the  
 2579 installation or replacement of the user's list of trust anchor certificates. Operating systems are  
 2580 often shipped with "code signing" trust anchor certificates. The user relies upon the  
 2581 authenticity of the software distribution mechanism to ensure that only valid trust anchor  
 2582 certificates are installed during installation or replacement. However, in some cases other  
 2583 applications may install trust anchor certificates in web browsers.

2584 Trust anchor certificates in web browsers are used for several purposes, including the  
 2585 validation of S/MIME e-mail certificates and web server certificates for "secure websites" that  
 2586 use the TLS protocol to authenticate the web server and provide confidentiality. Users who  
 2587 visit a "secure" website that has a certificate not issued by a trust anchor CA may be given an  
 2588 opportunity to accept that certificate, either for a single session or permanently. **Relying users**  
 2589 **should be cautious about accepting certificates from unknown Certification Authorities**  
 2590 **so that they do not, in effect, inadvertently add new permanent trust anchor certificates**  
 2591 **that are really not trustworthy.**

2592 **Warning:** Roaming users **should** be aware that they are implicitly trusting all software on the  
 2593 host systems that they use. They should have concerns about trust anchor certificates used by  
 2594 web browsers when they use systems in kiosks, libraries, Internet cafes, or hotels, as well as  
 2595 systems provided by conference organizers to access "secure websites." The user has had no  
 2596 control over the trust anchor certificates installed in the host system, and therefore the user is  
 2597 relying upon the host systems to have made good, sensible decisions about which trust anchor  
 2598 certificates are allowed; relying parties are not participants in trust anchor certificate selection  
 2599 when the trust anchor certificates are pre-installed prior to software distribution, and may have  
 2600 had no part in decisions about which trust anchor certificates are installed thereafter. The user  
 2601 should be aware that he is trusting the software distribution mechanism to avoid the installation  
 2602 of malicious code. Extending this trust to cover trust anchor certificates for a given application  
 2603 may be reasonable, and allows the relying party to obtain trust anchor certificates without any  
 2604 additional procedures.

2605 When a user registers keys with an infrastructure, additional mechanisms are usually available.  
 2606 The user interacts securely with the infrastructure to register its keys (e.g., to obtain  
 2607 certificates), and these interactions may be extended to provide trust anchor information in the  
 2608 form of a trust anchor certificate. This allows the user to establish trust anchor certificates with  
 2609 approximately the same assurance that the infrastructure has in the user's keys. In the case of a  
 2610 PKI:

2611 1. The initial distribution of a trust anchor certificate **should** be performed in conjunction  
 2612 with the presentation of a requesting entity's public key to a registration authority (RA)  
 2613 or CA during the certificate request process. In general, the trust anchor's public key,  
 2614 associated parameters, key use, and assurance of possession are conveyed as a self-  
 2615 signed X.509 public-key certificate. In this case, the certificate has been digitally signed

2616 by the private key that corresponds to the public key within the certificate. While the  
 2617 parameters and assurance of possession may be conveyed in the self-signed certificate,  
 2618 the identity associated with the trust anchor certificate and other information cannot be  
 2619 verified from the self-signed certificate itself (see item 2 below).

2620 2. The trusted process used to convey a requesting entity's public key and assurances to  
 2621 the RA or CA **shall** also be used to protect the trust anchor's certificate that is conveyed  
 2622 to the requesting entity. In cases where the requesting entity appears in person, the trust  
 2623 anchor's certificate may be provided at that time. If a secret value has been established  
 2624 during user registration (see [Section 8.1.1](#)), the trust anchor's certificate may be  
 2625 supplied, along with the requesting entity's certificate.

#### 2626 **8.1.5.1.1.2 Submission to a Registration Authority or Certification Authority**

2627 Public keys may be provided to a Certification Authority (CA) or to a registration authority  
 2628 (RA) for subsequent certification by a CA. During this process, the RA or CA **shall** obtain the  
 2629 assurances listed in [Section 8.1.5.1.1](#) from the owner of the key or an authorized representative  
 2630 (e.g., the firewall administrator), including the owner's identity.

2631 In general, the owner of the key is identified in terms of an identifier established during user  
 2632 registration (see [Section 8.1.1](#)). The key owner identifies the appropriate uses for the key,  
 2633 along with any required parameters. In cases where anonymous ownership of the public key is  
 2634 acceptable, the owner or the registration authority determines a pseudonym to be used as the  
 2635 identifier. The identifier **shall** be unique for the naming authority<sup>42</sup>.

2636 Proof of Possession (POP) is a mechanism that is commonly used by a CA to obtain assurance  
 2637 of private-key possession during key registration. In this case, the proof **shall** be provided by  
 2638 the reputed owner of the key pair. Without assurance of possession, it would be possible for the  
 2639 CA to bind the public key to the wrong entity.

2640 The (reputed) owner **should** provide POP by performing operations with the private key that  
 2641 satisfy the indicated key use. For example, if a key pair is intended for RSA digital signature  
 2642 generation, the CA may provide information to be signed using the owner's private key. If the  
 2643 owner can correctly verify the signature using the corresponding public key, then the owner  
 2644 has established POP. However, when a key pair is intended to support key establishment (i.e.,  
 2645 either key agreement or key transport), POP may also be afforded by using the private key to  
 2646 digitally sign the certificate request (although this is not the preferred method). The private  
 2647 key-establishment key (i.e., the private key-agreement or private key-transport key) **shall not**  
 2648 be used to perform signature operations after certificate issuance.

2649 As with user registration, the strength of the security infrastructure depends upon the methods  
 2650 used for distributing the key to an RA or CA. There are many different methods, each  
 2651 appropriate for some range of applications. Some examples of common methods are:

2652 1. The public key and the information identified in [Section 8.1.5.1.1](#) are provided in  
 2653 person by the public-key owner in person, or by an authorized representative of the  
 2654 public-key owner.

---

<sup>42</sup> The naming authority is the entity responsible for the allocation and distribution of domain names, ensuring that the names are unique within the domain. A naming authority is often restricted to a particular level of domains, such as .com, .net or .edu.

2655 2. The identity of the public-key owner or an authorized representative of the public-key  
 2656 owner (i.e., a person, organization, device or process) is established at the RA or CA in  
 2657 person during user registration. Unique, unpredictable information (e.g., an  
 2658 authenticator or cryptographic key) is provided at this time by the RA or CA to the  
 2659 owner or authorized representative as a secret value. The public key and the  
 2660 information identified in [Section 8.1.5.1.1](#) are provided to the RA or CA using a  
 2661 communication protocol protected by the secret value. The secret value **should** be  
 2662 destroyed by the key owner as specified in [Section 8.3.4](#) upon receiving confirmation  
 2663 that the certificate has been successfully generated. The RA or CA may maintain this  
 2664 secret value for auditing purposes, but the RA or CA **should not** accept further use of  
 2665 the secret value to prove identity.

2666 When a specific list of public-key owners are pre-authorized to register keys, identifiers  
 2667 may be assigned without the owners being present. In this case, it is critical to protect  
 2668 the secret values from disclosure, and the procedures **shall** demonstrate that the chain  
 2669 of custody was maintained. The lifetime of the secret values **should** be limited, but  
 2670 **shall** allow for the public-key owner to appear at the RA or CA, to generate his keys,  
 2671 and to provide the public key (under the secret value's protection) to the RA or CA.  
 2672 Since it may take some time for the public-key owner to appear at the RA or CA, a two  
 2673 or three-week lifetime for the secret value is probably reasonable.

2674 When public-key owners are not pre-authorized, the RA or CA **shall** determine the  
 2675 identifier in the user's presence. In this case, the time limit may be much more  
 2676 restrictive, since the public-key owner need only generate his keys and provide the  
 2677 public key to the CA or RA. In this case, a 24-hour lifetime for the secret value would  
 2678 be reasonable.

2679 3. The identity of the public-key owner is established at the RA or CA using a previous  
 2680 determination of the public-key owner's identity. This is accomplished by "chaining" a  
 2681 new public-key certificate request to a previously certified digital-signature key pair.  
 2682 For example, the request for a new public-key certificate is signed by the owner of the  
 2683 new public key to be certified. The private signature key used to sign the request  
 2684 **should** correspond to a public signature-verification key that is certified by the same  
 2685 CA that will certify the new public key. The request contains the new public key and  
 2686 any key-related information (e.g., the key use and the key's parameters). In addition, the  
 2687 CA **shall** obtain assurance of public-key validity and assurance that the owner  
 2688 possesses the corresponding private key.

2689 4. The public key, key use, parameters, validity assurance information, and assurance of  
 2690 possession are provided to the RA or CA, along with a claimed identity. The RA or CA  
 2691 delegates the verification of the public-key owner's identity to another trusted process  
 2692 (e.g., an examination of the public-key owner's identity by the U.S. Postal Service  
 2693 when delivering registered mail containing the requested certificate). Upon receiving a  
 2694 request for certification, the RA or CA generates and sends unique, unpredictable  
 2695 information (e.g., an authenticator or cryptographic key) to the requestor using a trusted  
 2696 process (e.g., registered mail sent via the U.S. Postal Service). The trusted process  
 2697 assures that the identity of the requestor is verified prior to delivery of the information  
 2698 provided by the RA or CA. The owner uses this information to prove that the trusted  
 2699 process succeeded, and the RA or CA subsequently delivers the certificate to the owner.

2700 The unique, unpredictable information **should** be destroyed by the key owner as  
 2701 specified in [Section 8.3.4](#) upon receiving confirmation that the certificate has been  
 2702 successfully generated. (The RA or CA may maintain this information for auditing  
 2703 purposes, but **should not** accept further use of the unique identifier to prove identity.)

2704 In cases involving an RA, upon receipt of all information from the requesting entity (i.e., the  
 2705 owner of the new public key), the RA forwards the relevant information to a CA for  
 2706 certification. The RA and CA, in combination, **shall** perform any validation or other checks  
 2707 required for the algorithm with which the public key will be used (e.g., public-key validation)  
 2708 prior to issuing a certificate. The CA **should** indicate the checks or validations that have been  
 2709 performed (e.g., in the certificate, or in the certificate policy or certification practice  
 2710 statement). After generation, the certificate is distributed manually or using automated  
 2711 protocols to the RA, the public-key owner, or a certificate repository (i.e., a directory) in  
 2712 accordance with the CA's certification practice statement.

### 2713 **8.1.5.1.1.3 General Distribution**

2714 Public keys may be distributed to entities other than an RA or CA in several ways. Distribution  
 2715 methods include:

- 2716 1. Manual distribution of the public key itself by the owner of the public key (e.g., in a  
 2717 face-to-face transfer or by a bonded courier); the mandatory assurances listed in [Section](#)  
 2718 [8.1.5.1.1](#) **shall** be provided to the recipient prior to the use of the public key  
 2719 operationally.
- 2720 2. Manual (e.g., in a face-to-face transfer or by receipted mail) or automated distribution  
 2721 of a public-key certificate by the public-key owner, the CA, or a certificate repository  
 2722 (i.e., a directory). The mandatory assurances listed in [Section 8.1.5.1.1](#) that are not  
 2723 provided by the CA (e.g., public-key validation) **shall** be provided to or performed by  
 2724 the receiver of the public key prior to the use of the key operationally.
- 2725 3. Automated distribution of a public key (e.g., using a communication protocol with  
 2726 authentication and content integrity). The mandatory assurances listed in [Section](#)  
 2727 [8.1.5.1.1](#) **shall** be provided to the receiving entity prior to the use of the public key  
 2728 operationally.

### 2729 **8.1.5.1.2 Distribution of Ephemeral Public Keys**

2730 When used, ephemeral public keys are distributed as part of a secure key-agreement protocol.  
 2731 The key-agreement process (i.e., the key-agreement scheme + the protocol + key confirmation  
 2732 + any associated negotiation + local processing) **should** provide a recipient with the assurances  
 2733 listed in [Section 8.1.5.1.1](#). The recipient of an ephemeral public key **shall** obtain assurance of  
 2734 validity of that key as specified in [\[SP800-56A\]](#) prior to using that key for subsequent steps in  
 2735 the key-agreement process.

### 2736 **8.1.5.1.3 Distribution of Centrally Generated Key Pairs**

2737 When a static key pair is centrally generated, the key pair **shall** be generated within a FIPS140-  
 2738 validated cryptographic module or obtained from another source approved by the U.S.  
 2739 government for protecting national security information for subsequent delivery to the intended  
 2740 owner of the key pair. A signing key pair generated by a central key-generation facility for its  
 2741 subscribers will not provide strong support for non-repudiation for those individual

2742 subscribers; therefore, when support for non-repudiation is required by those subscribers, the  
 2743 subscribers **should** generate their own signing key pairs. However, if the central key-  
 2744 generation facility generates signing key pairs for its own organization and distributes them to  
 2745 members of the organization, then support for non-repudiation may be provided at an  
 2746 organizational level (but not an individual level).

2747 The private key of a key pair generated at a central facility **shall** only be distributed to the  
 2748 intended owner of the key pair. The confidentiality of the centrally generated private key **shall**  
 2749 be protected, and the procedures for distribution **shall** include an authentication of the  
 2750 recipient's identity as established during user registration (see [Section 8.1.1](#)).

2751 The key pair may be distributed to the intended owner using an appropriate manual method  
 2752 (e.g., courier, mail or other method specified by the key-generation facility) or secure  
 2753 automated method (e.g., a secure communication protocol). The private key **shall** be  
 2754 distributed in the same manner as a symmetric key (see [Section 8.1.5.2.2](#)). During the  
 2755 distribution process, each key of the key pair **shall** be provided with the appropriate protections  
 2756 for that key (see [Section 6.1](#)).

2757 When split-knowledge procedures are used for the manual distribution of the private key, the  
 2758 key **shall** be split into multiple key components that have the same security properties as the  
 2759 original key (e.g., randomness); each key component **shall** provide no knowledge of the value  
 2760 of the original key (e.g., each key component **shall** appear to be generated randomly).

2761 Upon receipt of the key pair, the owner **shall** obtain assurance of the validity of the public key  
 2762 (see [\[SP800-56A\]](#), [\[SP800-56B\]](#) and [\[SP800-89\]](#)). The owner **shall** obtain assurance that the  
 2763 public and private keys of the key pair are correctly associated (i.e., check that they are a  
 2764 consistent pair, for example, by checking that a key encrypted under a public key-transport key  
 2765 can be decrypted by the private key-transport key).

### 2766 **8.1.5.2 Generation and Distribution of Symmetric Keys**

2767 The symmetric keys used for the encryption and decryption of data or other keys and for the  
 2768 computation of MACs (see Sections [4.2.2](#) and [4.2.3](#)) **shall** be determined by an **approved**  
 2769 method and **shall** be provided with protection that is consistent with Section 6.

2770 Symmetric keys **shall** be either:

- 2771 1. Generated and subsequently distributed (see Sections [8.1.5.2.1](#) and [8.1.5.2.2](#)) either  
 2772 manually (see [Section 8.1.5.2.2.1](#)), using a public key-transport mechanism (see  
 2773 [Section 8.1.5.2.2.2](#)), or using a previously distributed or agreed-upon key wrapping key  
 2774 (see [Section 8.1.5.2.2.2](#)),
- 2775 2. Established using a key-agreement scheme (i.e., the generation and distribution are  
 2776 accomplished with one process) (see [Section 8.1.5.2.3](#)), or
- 2777 3. Derived from a master key (see [Section 8.2.4](#)).

#### 2778 **8.1.5.2.1 Key Generation**

2779 Symmetric keys determined by key generation methods **shall** be either generated by an  
 2780 **approved** method (e.g., using an **approved** random number generator), or derived from a  
 2781 master key (see [Section 8.2.4](#)) using an **approved** key-derivation function (see [\[SP800-108\]](#)).  
 2782 Also, see [\[SP800-133\]](#).

2783 When split-knowledge procedures are used, the key **shall** exist outside of a [\[FIPS140\]](#)  
 2784 cryptographic module as multiple key components. The keying material may be created within  
 2785 a cryptographic module and then split into components for export from the module, or may be  
 2786 created as separate components. Each key component **shall** provide no knowledge of the key  
 2787 value (e.g., each key component must appear to be generated randomly). If knowledge of  $k$   
 2788 components is required to construct the original key, then knowledge of any  $k-1$  key  
 2789 components **shall** provide no information about the original key other than, possibly, its length.  
 2790 Note: A suitable combination function is not provided by simple concatenation; e.g., it is not  
 2791 acceptable to form a 128-bit key by concatenating two 64-bit key components.

2792 All keys and key components **shall** be generated within a FIPS 140-validated cryptographic  
 2793 module or obtained from another source approved by the U.S. Government for the protection  
 2794 of national security information.

#### 2795 **8.1.5.2.2 Key Distribution**

2796 Keys generated in accordance with [Section 8.1.5.2.1](#) as key-wrapping keys (i.e., key-  
 2797 encrypting keys), as master keys to be used for key derivation, or for the protection of  
 2798 communicated information are distributed manually (manual key transport) or using an  
 2799 automated key-transport protocol (automated key transport).

2800 Keys used only for the storage of information (i.e., data or keying material) **shall not** be  
 2801 distributed except for backup or to other authorized entities that may require access to the  
 2802 stored information protected by the keys.

##### 2803 **8.1.5.2.2.1 Manual Key Distribution**

2804 Keys distributed manually (i.e., by other than an automated key-transport protocol) **shall** be  
 2805 protected throughout the distribution process. During manual distribution, secret or private  
 2806 keys **shall** either be wrapped (i.e., encrypted) or be distributed using appropriate physical  
 2807 security procedures. If multi-party control is desired, split knowledge procedures may be used  
 2808 as well. The manual distribution process **shall** assure that:

- 2809 1. The distribution of the keys is from an authorized source,
- 2810 2. Any entity distributing plaintext keys is trusted by both the entity that generates the  
 2811 keys and the entity(ies) that receives the keys,
- 2812 3. The keys are protected in accordance with [Section 6](#), and
- 2813 4. The keys are received by the authorized recipient.

2814 When distributed in encrypted form, the key **shall** be encrypted by an **approved** key-wrapping  
 2815 scheme using a key-wrapping key that is used only for key wrapping, or by an **approved** key-  
 2816 transport scheme using a public key-transport key owned by the intended recipient. The key-  
 2817 wrapping key or public key-transport key **shall** have been distributed as specified in this  
 2818 Recommendation.

2819 When using split knowledge procedures, each key component **shall** be either encrypted or  
 2820 distributed separately to each individual. Appropriate physical security procedures **shall** be  
 2821 used to protect each key component as sensitive information.

2822 Physical security procedures may be used for all forms of manual key distribution. However,  
 2823 these procedures are particularly critical when the keys are distributed in plaintext form. In

2824 addition to the assurances listed above, accountability and auditing of the distribution process  
2825 (see Sections [9.1](#) and [9.2](#)) **should** be used.

#### 2826 **8.1.5.2.2 Automated Key Distribution/Key Transport/Key Wrapping**

2827 Automated key distribution, also known as key transport or key wrapping, is used to distribute  
2828 keys via a communication channel (e.g., the Internet or a satellite transmission). This requires  
2829 the prior distribution of a key-wrapping key (i.e., a key-encryption key) or a public key-  
2830 transport key as follows:

- 2831 1. A key-wrapping key **shall** be generated and distributed in accordance with Sections  
2832 [8.1.5.2.1](#) and [8.1.5.2.2](#), or established using a key-agreement scheme as defined in  
2833 [Section 8.1.5.2.3](#).
- 2834 2. A public key-transport key **shall** be generated and distributed as specified in [Section](#)  
2835 [8.1.5.1](#).

2836 Only **approved** key-wrapping or public key-transport schemes **shall** be used. The **approved**  
2837 schemes provide assurance that:

- 2838 a. For symmetric key-wrapping schemes: The key-wrapping key and the distributed key  
2839 are not disclosed or modified. **Approved** key-wrapping algorithms are provided in  
2840 [\[SP800-38F\]](#). Note that in this case, key encryption alone, as discussed in [Section](#)  
2841 [4.2.5.4](#), does not provide protection against modification; an additional integrity  
2842 mechanism must be used (e.g., by using an authenticated encryption mode).
- 2843 b. For asymmetric key-transport schemes: The private key-transport key and the  
2844 distributed key are not disclosed or modified, and correct association between the  
2845 private and public key-transport keys is maintained. **Approved** key-transport schemes  
2846 using asymmetric techniques are provided in [\[SP800-56A\]](#) and [\[SP800-56B\]](#).
- 2847 c. The keys are protected in accordance with [Section 6](#).

2848 In addition, the **approved** schemes, together with the associated key-establishment protocol,  
2849 **should** provide the following assurances:

- 2850 d. Each entity in the key-distribution process knows the identifier associated with the  
2851 other entity(ies),
- 2852 e. The keys are correctly associated with the entities involved in the key-distribution  
2853 process, and
- 2854 f. The keys have been received correctly.

#### 2855 **8.1.5.2.3 Key Agreement**

2856 Key agreement is used in a communication environment to establish keying material using  
2857 information contributed by all entities in the communication (most commonly, only two  
2858 entities) without actually sending the keying material. Only **approved** key-agreement schemes  
2859 **shall** be used. **Approved** key-agreement schemes using asymmetric techniques are provided in  
2860 [\[SP800-56A\]](#) and [\[SP800-56B\]](#). Key agreement uses asymmetric key pairs to calculate shared  
2861 secrets, which are then used to derive symmetric keys and other keying material (e.g., IVs).

2862 A key-agreement scheme uses either static or ephemeral asymmetric key pairs or both. The  
2863 asymmetric key pairs **should** be generated and distributed as discussed in [Section 8.1.5.1](#).

2864 Keying material derived from a key-agreement scheme **shall** be protected as specified in  
2865 [Section 6](#).

2866 A key-agreement scheme and its associated key-establishment protocol **should** provide the  
2867 following assurances:

2868 1. The identifiers for entities involved in the key-establishment protocol are correctly  
2869 associated with those entities. Assurance for the association of identifiers to entities  
2870 may be achieved by the key-agreement scheme or may be achieved by the protocol in  
2871 which key agreement is performed. Note that the identifier may be a “pseudo-  
2872 identifier”, not the identifier appearing on the entity’s birth certificate, for example.

2873 In the general case, an identifier is associated with each party involved in the key-  
2874 establishment protocol, and each entity in the key-establishment process must be able to  
2875 associate all the other entities with their appropriate identifier. In special cases, such as  
2876 the secure distribution of public information on a web site, the association with an  
2877 identifier may only be required for a subset of the entities (e.g., only the server).

2878 2. The keys used in the key-agreement scheme are correctly associated with the entities  
2879 involved in the key-establishment process.

2880 3. The derived keys are correct.

2881 Keys derived through key agreement and its enabling protocol **should not** be used to protect  
2882 and send information until the three assurances described above have been achieved.

### 2883 **8.1.5.3 Generation and Distribution of Other Keying Material**

2884 Keys are often generated in conjunction with or are used with other keying material. This other  
2885 keying material **shall** be protected in accordance with [Section 6.2](#).

#### 2886 **8.1.5.3.1 Domain Parameters**

2887 Domain parameters are used by some public-key algorithms to generate key pairs, to compute  
2888 digital signatures, or to establish keys. Typically, domain parameters are generated  
2889 infrequently and used by a community of users for a substantial period of time. Domain  
2890 parameters may be distributed in the same manner as the public keys with which they are  
2891 associated, or they may be made available at some other accessible site. Assurance of the  
2892 validity of the domain parameters **shall** be obtained prior to use, either by a trusted entity that  
2893 vouches for the parameters (e.g., a CA), or by the entities themselves. Assurance of domain-  
2894 parameter validity is addressed in [\[SP800-89\]](#) and [\[SP800-56A\]](#). Obtaining this assurance  
2895 **should** be addressed in a CA’s certification practices statement or an organization’s security  
2896 plan.

#### 2897 **8.1.5.3.2 Initialization Vectors**

2898 Initialization vectors (IVs) are used by symmetric-key algorithms in several modes of  
2899 operation for encryption and decryption, for authentication, or both. The criteria for the  
2900 generation and use of IVs are provided in the [\[SP800-38\]](#) series of publications; IVs **shall** be  
2901 protected as specified in [Section 6](#) of this Recommendation (i.e., SP 800-57, Part 1). When  
2902 distributed, IVs may be distributed in the same manner as their associated keys, or may be  
2903 distributed with the information that uses the IVs as part of the cryptographic mechanism.

2904 **8.1.5.3.3 Shared Secrets**

2905 Shared secrets are computed during an asymmetric key-agreement scheme and are  
2906 subsequently used to derive keying material. Shared secrets are generated as specified by an  
2907 appropriate key-agreement scheme (see [\[SP800-56A\]](#) and [\[SP800-56B\]](#)), and **shall not** be used  
2908 directly as keying material.

2909 **8.1.5.3.4 RBG Seeds**

2910 A Random Bit Generator (RBG) is a device or algorithm that outputs a sequence of bits that is  
2911 unpredictable; RBGs are often called Random Number Generators. **Approved** RBGs are  
2912 specified in [\[SP800-90\]](#). RBGs depend on the introduction of truly random bits called seeds,  
2913 which are used to initialize an RBG and that must be kept secret. An initialized RBG is often  
2914 used to generate keys and other values requiring unpredictability. The seeds themselves **shall**  
2915 **not** be used for any purpose other than RBG input. Seeds **shall** only be transmitted using  
2916 secure channels that protect the confidentiality and integrity of the seeds, as well as providing  
2917 replay protection<sup>43</sup> and mutual authentication<sup>44</sup>.

2918 **8.1.5.3.5 Other Public and Secret Information**

2919 Public and secret information may be used during the seeding of an RBG (see [Section](#)  
2920 [8.1.5.3.4](#)) or during the generation or establishment of keying material (see [\[SP800-56A\]](#),  
2921 [\[SP800-56B\]](#) and [\[SP800-108\]](#)). Public information may be distributed; secret information  
2922 **shall** be protected in the same manner as a private or secret key during distribution.

2923 **8.1.5.3.6 Intermediate Results**

2924 Intermediate results occur during computation using cryptographic algorithms. These results  
2925 **shall not** be distributed as or with the keying material.

2926 **8.1.5.3.7 Random Bits/Numbers**

2927 Random bits (or numbers) are used for many purposes, including the generation of keys and  
2928 nonces, and the issuing of challenges during communication protocols. Random bits may be  
2929 distributed, but whether or not confidentiality protection is required depends on the context in  
2930 which the random bits are used.

2931 **8.1.5.3.8 Passwords**

2932 Passwords are used for identity authentication or authorization, and, in some cases, to derive  
2933 keying material (see [\[SP800-132\]](#)). Passwords may be distributed, but their protection during  
2934 distribution **shall** be consistent with the protection required for their use. For example, if the  
2935 password will be used to access cryptographic keys that are used to provide 128 bits of security  
2936 strength when protecting data, then the password needs to be provided with at least 128 bits of  
2937 protection as well. Note that poorly selected passwords may not themselves provide the  
2938 required amount of protection for key access and are potentially the weak point of the process;  
2939 i.e., it may be far easier to guess the password than to attempt to “break” the cryptographic  
2940 protection used on the password. It is the responsibility of users and organizations to select  
2941 passwords that provide the requisite amount of protection for the keys they protect.

---

<sup>43</sup> Assurance that a valid data transmission is not maliciously or fraudulently repeated or delayed.

<sup>44</sup> Authentication by each party in a transaction of the identity of the other party.

### 2942 **8.1.6 Key Registration Function**

2943 Key registration results in the binding of keying material to information associated with a  
 2944 particular entity. Keys that would be registered include the public key of an asymmetric key  
 2945 pair and the symmetric key used to bootstrap an entity into a system. Normally, keys generated  
 2946 during communications (e.g., using key-agreement schemes or key derivation functions) would  
 2947 not be registered. Information provided during registration typically includes the identifier of  
 2948 the entity associated with the keying material and the intended use of the keying material (e.g.,  
 2949 as a signing key, data-encryption key, etc.). Additional information may include authorization  
 2950 information or specify a level of trust. The binding is performed after the entity's identity has  
 2951 been authenticated by a means that is consistent with the system policy (see [Section 8.1.1](#)). The  
 2952 binding provides assurance to the community-at-large that the keying material is used by the  
 2953 correct entity in the correct application. The binding is often cryptographic, which creates a  
 2954 strong association between the keying material and the entity. A trusted third party performs  
 2955 the binding. Examples of a trusted third party include a Kerberos realm server or a PKI  
 2956 certification authority (CA). Identifiers issued by a trusted third party **shall** be unique to that  
 2957 party.

2958 When a Kerberos realm server performs the binding, a symmetric key is stored on the server  
 2959 with the corresponding metadata. In this case, the registered keying material is maintained in  
 2960 secure storage (i.e., the keys are provided with confidentiality and integrity protection).

2961 When a CA performs the binding, the public key and associated information (often called  
 2962 *attributes*) are placed in a public-key certificate, which is digitally signed by the CA. In this  
 2963 case, the registered keying material may be made publicly available.

2964 When a CA provides a certificate for a public key, the public key **shall** be verified to ensure  
 2965 that it is associated with the private key known by the purported owner of the public key. This  
 2966 provides assurance of possession. When POP is used to obtain assurance of possession, the  
 2967 assurance **shall** be accomplished as specified in [Section 8.1.5.1.1.2](#).

### 2968 **8.2 Operational Phase**

2969 Keying material used during the cryptoperiod of a key is often stored for access as needed.  
 2970 During storage, the keying material **shall** be protected as specified in [Section 6.2.2](#). During  
 2971 normal use, the keying material is stored either on the device or module that uses that material,  
 2972 or on an immediately accessible storage media. When the keying material is required for  
 2973 operational use, the keying material is acquired from immediately accessible storage when not  
 2974 present in active memory within the device or module.

2975 To provide continuity of operations when the keying material becomes unavailable for use  
 2976 from normal operational storage during its cryptoperiod (e.g., because the material is lost or  
 2977 corrupted), keying material may need to be recoverable. If an analysis of system operations  
 2978 indicates that the keying material needs to be recoverable, then the keying material **shall** either  
 2979 be backed up (see [Section 8.2.2.1](#)), or the system **shall** be designed to allow reconstruction  
 2980 (e.g., re-derivation) of the keying material. Retrieving or reconstructing keying material from  
 2981 backup or an archive is commonly known as key recovery (see [Section 8.2.2.2](#)).

2982 At the end of a key's cryptoperiod, a new key needs to be available to replace the old key if  
 2983 operations are to be continued. This can be accomplished by re-keying (see [Section 8.2.3.1](#)) or  
 2984 by key derivation (see [Section 8.2.4](#)). A key **shall** be destroyed in accordance with [Section](#)

2985 [8.3.4](#) and **should** be destroyed as soon as that key is no longer needed in order to reduce the  
2986 risk of exposure.

## 2987 **8.2.1 Normal Operational Storage Function**

2988 One objective of key management is to facilitate the operational availability of keying material  
2989 for standard cryptographic purposes. Usually, a key remains operational until the end of the  
2990 key's cryptoperiod (i.e., the expiration date). During normal operational use, keying material is  
2991 available either in the device or module (e.g., in RAM) or in an immediately accessible storage  
2992 media (e.g., on a local hard disk).

### 2993 **8.2.1.1 Cryptographic Module Storage**

2994 Keying material may be stored in the cryptographic module that adds, checks, or removes the  
2995 cryptographic protection on information. The storage of the keying material **shall** be consistent  
2996 with [Section 6.2.2](#), as well as with [\[FIPS140\]](#).

### 2997 **8.2.1.2 Immediately Accessible Storage Media**

2998 Keying material may need to be stored for normal cryptographic operations on an immediately  
2999 accessible storage media (e.g., a local hard drive) during the cryptoperiod of the key. The  
3000 storage requirements of [Section 6.2.2](#) **shall** apply to this keying material.

## 3001 **8.2.2 Continuity of Operations Function**

3002 Keying material can become lost or unusable, due to hardware damage, corruption or loss of  
3003 program or data files, system policy or configuration changes. In order to maintain the  
3004 continuity of operations, it is often necessary for users and/or administrators to be able to  
3005 recover keying materials from backup storage. However, if operations can be continued  
3006 without the backup of keying material (e.g., by re-keying), or the keying material can be  
3007 recovered or reconstructed without being saved, it may be preferable not to save the keying  
3008 material in order to lessen the possibility of a compromise of the keying material or other  
3009 cryptographically related information.

3010 The compromise of keying material affects the continuity of operations (see [Section 8.4](#)).  
3011 When keying material is compromised, the continuity of operations requires the establishment  
3012 of entirely new keying material (see [Section 8.1.5](#)), following an assessment of what keying  
3013 material is affected and needs to be replaced.

### 3014 **8.2.2.1 Backup Storage**

3015 The backup of keying material on an independent, secure storage media provides a source for  
3016 key recovery (see [Section 8.2.2.2](#)). Backup storage is used to store copies of information that  
3017 are also currently available in normal operational storage during a key's cryptoperiod (i.e., in  
3018 the cryptographic module, or on an immediately accessible storage media - see [Section](#)  
3019 [8.2.1.1](#)). Not all keys need be backed up. The storage requirements of [Section 6.2.2](#) apply to  
3020 keying material that is backed up. Tables [7](#) and [8](#) provide guidance about the backup of each  
3021 type of keying material and other related information. An "OK" indicates that storage is  
3022 permissible, but not necessarily required. The final determination for backup **should** be made  
3023 based on the application in which the keying material is used. A detailed discussion about the  
3024 backup of each type of key and other cryptographic information is provided in [Appendix B.3](#).

3025 Keying material maintained in backup **should** remain in storage for at least as long as the same  
 3026 keying material is maintained in storage for normal operational use (see [Section 8.2.1](#)). When  
 3027 no longer needed for normal operational use, the keying material and other related information  
 3028 **should** be removed from backup storage. When removed from backup storage, all traces of the  
 3029 information in backup storage **shall** be destroyed in accordance with [Section 8.3.4](#).

3030 A discussion of backup and recovery is provided in [\[ITLBulletin\]](#).

3031 **Table 7: Backup of keys**

Type of Key	Backup?
Private signature key	No (in general); support for non-repudiation would be in question. However, backup may be warranted in some cases – a CA’s private signing key, for example. When required, any backed up keys <b>shall</b> be stored under the owner’s control.
Public signature-verification key	OK; its presence in a public-key certificate that is available elsewhere may be sufficient.
Symmetric authentication key	OK
Private authentication key	OK, if required by an application.
Public authentication key	OK; if required by an application.
Symmetric data encryption key	OK
Symmetric key-wrapping key	OK
Random number generation key	Not necessary and may not be desirable, depending on the application.
Symmetric master key	OK
Private key-transport key	OK
Public key-transport key	OK; its presence in a public-key certificate that is available elsewhere may be sufficient.
Symmetric key-agreement key	OK
Private static key-agreement key	OK
Public static key-agreement key	OK; its presence in a public-key certificate that is available elsewhere may be sufficient.
Private ephemeral key-agreement key	No
Public ephemeral key-agreement key	OK
Symmetric authorization key	OK
Private authorization key	OK

Type of Key	Backup?
Public authorization key	OK; its presence in a public-key certificate that is available elsewhere may be sufficient.

3032

3033 **Table 8: Backup of other cryptographic or related information**

Type of Keying Material	Backup?
Domain parameters	OK
Initialization vector	OK, if necessary
Shared secret	No
RBG seed	No
Other public information	OK
Other secret information	OK
Intermediate results	No
Key control information (e.g., IDs, purpose, etc.)	OK
Random number	Depends on the application or use of the random number.
Passwords	OK when used to derive keys or to detect the reuse of passwords; otherwise, No
Audit information	OK

3034

3035 **8.2.2.2 Key Recovery Function**

3036 Keying material that is in active memory or stored in normal operational storage may  
3037 sometimes be lost or corrupted (e.g., from a system crash or power fluctuation). Some of the  
3038 keying material is needed to continue operations and cannot easily be replaced. An assessment  
3039 needs to be made of which keying material needs to be preserved for possible recovery at a  
3040 later time.

3041 The decision as to whether key recovery is required **should** be made on a case-by-case basis.

3042 The decision **should** be based on:

- 3043 1. The type of key (e.g., private signature key or symmetric data-encryption key);
- 3044 2. The application in which the key will be used (e.g., interactive communications or file  
3045 storage);
- 3046 3. Whether the key is "owned" by the local entity (e.g., a private key) or by another entity  
3047 (e.g., the other entity's public key) or is shared (e.g., a symmetric data-encryption key  
3048 shared by two entities);
- 3049 4. The role of the entity in a communication (e.g., sender or receiver); and

3050 5. The algorithm or computation in which the key will be used (e.g., does the entity have  
 3051 the necessary information to perform a given computation if the key were to be  
 3052 recovered)<sup>45</sup>.

3053 The factors involved in a decision for or against key recovery **should** be carefully assessed.  
 3054 The trade-offs are concerned with continuity of operations versus the risk of possibly exposing  
 3055 the keying material and the information it protects if control of the keying material is lost. If it  
 3056 is determined that a key needs to be recovered, and the key is still active (i.e., the cryptoperiod  
 3057 of the key has not expired), then the key may be replaced in order to limit the exposure of the  
 3058 data protected by that key (see [Section 8.2.3](#)).

3059 Issues associated with key recovery and discussions about whether or not different types of  
 3060 cryptographic material need to be recoverable are provided in [Appendix B](#).

### 3061 **8.2.3 Key Change Function**

3062 Key change is the replacement of a key with another key that performs the same function as the  
 3063 original key. There are several reasons for changing a key.

- 3064 1. The key may have been compromised.
- 3065 2. The key's cryptoperiod may be nearing expiration.
- 3066 3. It may be desirable to limit the amount of data protected with any given key.

#### 3067 **8.2.3.1 Re-keying**

3068 If the new key is generated in a manner that is entirely independent of the "value" of the old  
 3069 key, the process is known as re-keying. This replacement **shall** be accomplished using one of  
 3070 the key-establishment methods discussed in [Section 8.1.5](#). Re-keying is used when a key has  
 3071 been compromised (provided that the re-keying scheme itself is not compromised) or when the  
 3072 cryptoperiod is nearing expiration.

#### 3073 **8.2.3.2 Key Update Function**

3074 If the "value" of the new key is dependent on the value of the old key, the process is known as  
 3075 key update (i.e., the current key is modified to create a new key). Key update is a special case  
 3076 of key derivation (see [Section 8.2.4](#)), where the derived key replaces the key used to derive it.  
 3077 For example, suppose that  $K_1$  is used as an encryption key. When  $K_1$  needs to be replaced, it is  
 3078 used to derive  $K_2$ .  $K_2$  is then used as the new encryption key until it is replaced by  $K_3$ , which is  
 3079 derived from  $K_2$ .

3080 Key update could result in a security exposure if an adversary obtains a key in the chain of  
 3081 keys and knows the update process used; keys subsequent to the compromised key could easily  
 3082 be determined.

3083 Federal applications **shall not** use key update (also, see [\[SP800-152\]](#)).

### 3084 **8.2.4 Key Derivation Methods**

3085 Cryptographic keys may be derived from a secret value. The secret value, together with other  
 3086 information, is input into a key-derivation method (e.g., a key-derivation function) that outputs

---

<sup>45</sup> This could be the case when performing a key-establishment process for some key-establishment schemes (see [\[SP800-56A\]](#) and [\[SP800-56B\]](#)).

3087 the required key(s). In contrast to key change, the derived keys are often used for new  
 3088 purposes, rather than for replacing the secret values from which they are derived. The  
 3089 derivation method **shall** be non-reversible (i.e., a one-way function) so that the secret value  
 3090 cannot be determined from the derived keys. In addition, it **shall not** be possible to determine a  
 3091 derived key from other derived keys. It should be noted that the strength of a derived key is no  
 3092 greater than the strength of the derivation algorithm and the secret value from which the key is  
 3093 derived.

3094 Three commonly used key-derivation cases are discussed below.

- 3095 1. *Two parties derive common keys from a common shared secret.* This approach is used  
 3096 in the key-establishment techniques specified in [\[SP800-56A\]](#) and [\[SP800-56B\]](#). The  
 3097 security of this process is dependent on the security of the shared secret and the specific  
 3098 key-derivation method used. If the shared secret is known, the derived keys may be  
 3099 determined. A key-derivation method specified or allowed in [\[SP800-56A\]](#), [\[SP800-56B\]](#)  
 3100 or [\[SP800-56C\]](#) **shall** be used for this purpose. These derived keys may be used to  
 3101 provide the same confidentiality, identity authentication, and source authentication  
 3102 services as randomly generated keys, with a security strength determined by the scheme  
 3103 and key pairs used to generate the shared secret.
- 3104 2. *Keys derived from a key-derivation key (master key).* This is often accomplished by  
 3105 using the key-derivation key, entity ID, and other known information as input to a  
 3106 function that generates the keys. One of the key-derivation functions defined in [\[SP800-108\]](#)  
 3107 **shall** be used for this purpose. The security of this process depends upon the  
 3108 security of the key-derivation key and the key-derivation function. If the key-derivation  
 3109 key is known by an adversary, he can generate any of the derived keys. Therefore, keys  
 3110 derived from a key-derivation key are only as secure as the key-derivation key itself. As  
 3111 long as the key-derivation key is kept secret, the derived keys may be used in the same  
 3112 manner as randomly generated keys.
- 3113 3. *Keys derived from a password.* A user-generated password, by its very nature, is less  
 3114 random (i.e., has lower entropy) than is required for a cryptographic key; that is, the  
 3115 number of passwords that are likely to be used to derive a key is significantly smaller  
 3116 than the number of keys that are possible for a given key size. In order to increase the  
 3117 difficulty of exhaustively searching the likely passwords, a key-derivation function is  
 3118 iterated a large number of times. The key is derived using a password, entity ID, and  
 3119 other known information as input to the key-derivation function. The security of the  
 3120 derived key depends upon the security of the password and the key-derivation process.  
 3121 If the password is known or can be guessed, then the corresponding derived key can be  
 3122 generated. Therefore, keys derived in this manner are likely to be less secure than  
 3123 randomly generated keys or keys derived from a shared secret or key-derivation key.  
 3124 For storage applications, one of the key-derivation methods specified in [\[SP800-132\]](#)  
 3125 **shall** be used to derive keys. For non-storage applications, keys derived in this manner  
 3126 **shall** be used for integrity, and source authentication purposes only and not for general  
 3127 encryption.

### 3128 8.3 Post-Operational Phase

3129 During the post-operational phase, keying material is no longer in operational use, but access  
 3130 to the keying material may still be possible.

### 3131 **8.3.1 Archive Storage and Key Recovery Functions**

3132 A key archive is a repository containing keying material and other related information for  
3133 recovery beyond the cryptoperiod of the keys. Not all keying material needs to be archived. An  
3134 organization's security plan **should** indicate the types of information that are to be archived  
3135 (see [[SP800-57, Part 2](#)]).

3136 The archive **shall** continue to provide the appropriate protections for each key and any other  
3137 related information in the archive, as specified in [Section 6.2.2](#). The archive will require a  
3138 strong access-control mechanism to limit access to only authorized entities. When keying  
3139 material is entered into the archive, it is often time-stamped so that the date-of-entry can be  
3140 determined. This date may itself be cryptographically protected so that it cannot be changed  
3141 without detection.

3142 If keying material needs to be recoverable (e.g., after the end of its cryptoperiod), either the  
3143 keying material **shall** be archived, or the system **shall** be designed to allow reconstruction (e.g.,  
3144 re-derivation) of the keying material from archived information. Retrieving the keying material  
3145 from archive storage or by reconstruction is commonly known as key recovery. The archive  
3146 **shall** be maintained by a trusted party (e.g., the organization associated with the keying  
3147 material or a trusted third party).

3148 While in storage, archived information may be either static (i.e., never changing) or may need  
3149 to be re-encrypted under a new archive-encryption key from time-to-time. Archived data  
3150 **should** be stored separately from operational data, and multiple copies of archived  
3151 cryptographic information **should** be provided in physically separate locations (i.e., it is  
3152 recommended that the key archive be backed up). For critical information that is encrypted  
3153 under archived keys, it may be necessary to back up the archived keys and to store multiple  
3154 copies of these archived keys in separate locations.

3155 When archived, keying material **should** be archived prior to the end of the cryptoperiod of the  
3156 key. For example, it may be prudent to archive the keying material during key activation.  
3157 When no longer required, the keying material **shall** be destroyed in accordance with [Section](#)  
3158 [8.3.4](#).

3159 The confidentiality of archived information is provided by an archive-encryption key (one or  
3160 more encryption keys that are used exclusively for the encryption of archived information), by  
3161 another key that has been archived, or by a key that may be derived from an archived key.  
3162 Note that the algorithm with which the archive-encryption key is used may also provide  
3163 integrity protection for the encrypted information. When encrypted by the archive-encryption  
3164 key, the encrypted keying material **shall** be re-encrypted by any new archive-encryption key at  
3165 the end of the cryptoperiod of the old archive-encryption key. When the keying material is re-  
3166 encrypted, integrity values on that keying material **shall** be recomputed. This may impose a  
3167 significant burden; therefore, the strength of the cryptographic algorithm and archive-  
3168 encryption key **shall** be selected to minimize the need for re-encryption.

3169 When the archive-encryption key and its associated algorithm do not also provide integrity  
3170 protection for the encrypted information, integrity protection **shall** be provided by a separate  
3171 archive-integrity key (i.e., one or more authentication or digital-signature keys that are used

3172 exclusively for the archive) or by another key that has been archived. If integrity protection is  
 3173 to be maintained at the end of the cryptoperiod of the archive-integrity key, new integrity  
 3174 values **shall** be computed on the archived information on which the old archive-integrity key  
 3175 was applied.

3176 When the confidentiality and integrity protection of the archived information is provided using  
 3177 separate processes, the archive-encryption key and archive-integrity key (when used) **shall** be  
 3178 different from each other (e.g., independently generated), and **shall** be protected in the same  
 3179 manner as their key type (see [Section 6](#)). Note that these two services can also be provided  
 3180 using authenticated encryption, which uses a single cryptographic algorithm operation and a  
 3181 single key.

3182 Tables [9](#) and [10](#) indicate the appropriateness of archiving keys and other cryptographically  
 3183 related information. An “OK” in column 2 (Archive?) indicates that archival is permissible,  
 3184 but not necessarily required. Column 3 (Retention period) indicates the minimum time that the  
 3185 key **should** be retained in the archive. Additional advice on the storage of keying material in  
 3186 archive storage is provided in [Appendix B.3](#).

3187 **Table 9: Archive of keys**

Type of Key	Archive?	Retention period (minimum)
Private signature key	No	
Public signature-verification key	OK	Until no longer required to verify data signed with the associated private key
Symmetric authentication key	OK	Until no longer needed to authenticate data or an identity.
Private authentication key	No	
Public authentication key	OK	
Symmetric data-encryption key	OK	Until no longer needed to decrypt data encrypted by this key
Symmetric key-wrapping key	OK	Until no longer needed to decrypt keys encrypted by this key
Symmetric random number generator key	No	
Symmetric master key	OK, if needed to derive other keys for archived data	Until no longer needed to derive other keys
Private key-transport key	OK	Until no longer needed to decrypt keys encrypted by this key
Public key-transport key	OK	

Type of Key	Archive?	Retention period (minimum)
Symmetric key-agreement key	OK	
Private static key-agreement key	OK	
Public static key-agreement key	OK	Until no longer needed to reconstruct keying material.
Private ephemeral key-agreement key	No	
Public ephemeral key-agreement key	OK	
Symmetric authorization key	No	
Private authorization key	No	
Public authorization key	OK	

3188

3189 **Table 10: Archive of other cryptographic related information**

Type of Key	Archive?	Retention period (minimum)
Domain parameters	OK	Until all keying material, signatures and signed data using the domain parameters are removed from the archive
Initialization vector	OK; normally stored with the protected information	Until no longer needed to process the protected data
Shared secret	No	
RBG seed	No	
Other public information	OK	Until no longer needed to process data using the public information
Other secret information	OK	Until no longer needed to process data using the secret information
Intermediate result	No	
Key control information (e.g., IDs, purpose)	OK	Until the associated key is removed from the archive
Random number		Depends on the application or use of the random number

Password	OK when used to derive keys or to detect the reuse of passwords; otherwise, No	Until no longer needed to (re-)derive keys or to detect password reuse
Audit information	OK	Until no longer needed

3190

3191 The recovery of archived keying material may be required to remove (e.g., decrypt) or check  
3192 (e.g., verify a digital signature or a MAC) the cryptographic protections on other archived data;  
3193 recovered keys **shall not** be used to apply cryptographic protection. The key recovery process  
3194 results in retrieving or reconstructing the desired keying material from archive storage in order  
3195 to perform the required cryptographic operation. Immediately after completing this operation,  
3196 the keying material **shall** be erased from the cryptographic process<sup>46</sup> for which it was  
3197 recovered (i.e., it **shall not** be used for normal operational activities). However, the key **shall**  
3198 be retained in the archive (see [Section 8.3.4](#)) as long as needed. Further advice on key recovery  
3199 issues is provided in [Appendix B](#).

### 3200 8.3.2 Entity De-registration Function

3201 The entity de-registration function removes the authorizations of an entity to participate in a  
3202 security domain. When an entity ceases to be a member of a security domain, the entity **shall**  
3203 be de-registered. De-registration is intended to prevent other entities from relying on or using  
3204 the de-registered entity's keying material.

3205 All records of the entity and the entity's associations **shall** be marked to indicate that the entity  
3206 is no longer a member of the security domain, but the records **should not** be deleted. To reduce  
3207 confusion and unavoidable human errors, identification information associated with the de-  
3208 registered entity **should not** be re-used (at least for a period of time). For example, if a “John  
3209 Wilson” retires and is de-registered on Friday, the identification information assigned to his  
3210 son “John Wilson”, who is hired the following Monday, **should** be different.

### 3211 8.3.3 Key De-registration Function

3212 Registered keying material may be associated with the identity of a key owner, owner  
3213 information (e.g., email address), role or authorization information. When the keying material  
3214 is no longer needed, or the associated information becomes invalid, the keying material **should**  
3215 be de- registered (i.e., all records of the keying material and its associations **should** be marked  
3216 to indicate that the key is no longer in use) by the appropriate trusted third party. In general,  
3217 this will be the trusted third party that registered the key (see [Section 8.1.6](#)).

3218 Keying material **should** be de-registered when the information associated with an entity is  
3219 modified. For example, if an entity's email address is associated with a public key, and the  
3220 entity's address changes, the keying material **should** be de-registered to indicate that the  
3221 associated information has become invalid. Unlike the case of a key compromise, the entity

<sup>46</sup> For example, an archived symmetric key could be recovered to decrypt a single message or file, or could be used to decrypt multiple messages or files, all of which were encrypted using that key during its originator-usage period.

3222 could safely re-register the public key after modifying the entity's information through the user  
3223 registration process (see [Section 8.1.1](#)).

3224 When a registered cryptographic key is compromised, that key and any associated keying  
3225 material **shall** be de-registered. When the compromised key is the private part of a public-  
3226 private key pair, the public key **shall** also be revoked (see [Section 8.3.5](#)). If the registration  
3227 information associated with a public-private key pair is changed, but the private key has not  
3228 been compromised, the public key **should** be revoked with an appropriate reason code (see  
3229 [Section 8.3.5](#)).

#### 3230 **8.3.4 Key Destruction Function**

3231 When copies of cryptographic keys are made, care should be taken to provide for their eventual  
3232 destruction. All copies of the private or symmetric key **shall** be destroyed as soon as they are  
3233 no longer required (e.g., for archival or reconstruction activity) in order to minimize the risk of  
3234 a compromise. Keys **shall** be destroyed in a manner that removes all traces of the keying  
3235 material so that it cannot be recovered by either physical or electronic means<sup>47</sup>. Public keys  
3236 may be retained or destroyed, as desired.

#### 3237 **8.3.5 Key Revocation Function**

3238 It is sometimes necessary to remove keying material from use prior to the end of its normal  
3239 cryptoperiod for reasons that include key compromise, removal of an entity from an  
3240 organization, etc. This process is known as key revocation and is used to explicitly revoke a  
3241 symmetric key or the public key of a key pair, although the private key corresponding to the  
3242 public key is also revoked.

3243 Key revocation may be accomplished using a notification indicating that the continued use of  
3244 the keying material is no longer recommended. The notification could be provided by actively  
3245 sending the notification to all entities that might be using the revoked keying material, or by  
3246 allowing the entities to request the status of the keying material (i.e., a “push” or a “pull” of the  
3247 status information). The notification **should** include a complete identification of the keying  
3248 material (excluding the key itself), the date and time of revocation and the reason for  
3249 revocation, when appropriate (e.g., a key compromise). Based on the revocation information  
3250 provided, other entities could then make a determination of how they will treat information  
3251 protected by the revoked keying material.

3252 For example, if a public signature-verification key is revoked because an entity left an  
3253 organization, it may be appropriate to honor all signatures created prior to the revocation date  
3254 (i.e., to continue to verify those signatures and accept them as valid if the verification is  
3255 successful). If a signing private key is compromised, resulting in the revocation of the  
3256 corresponding public key, an assessment needs to be made as to whether or not information  
3257 signed prior to the revocation notice would be considered as valid.

---

<sup>47</sup> A simple deletion of the keying material might not completely obliterate the information. For example, erasing the information might require overwriting that information multiple times with other non-related information, such as random bits, or all zero or one bits. Keys stored in memory for a long time can become “burned in”. This can be mitigated by splitting the key into components that are frequently updated (see [IDiCrescenzo](#)).

3258 As another example, a symmetric key that is used to generate MACs may be revoked so that it  
 3259 will not be used to generate MACs on new information. However, the key may be retained so  
 3260 that archived documents can be verified.

3261 The details for key revocation **should** reflect the lifecycle for each particular key. If a key is  
 3262 used in a pair-wise situation (e.g., two entities communicating using the same encryption key),  
 3263 the entity revoking the key **shall** inform the other entity of the revocation. If the key has been  
 3264 registered with an infrastructure, the entity revoking the key cannot always directly inform the  
 3265 other entities that may rely upon that key. Instead, the entity revoking the key **shall** inform the  
 3266 infrastructure that the key needs to be revoked (e.g., using a certificate revocation request). The  
 3267 infrastructure **shall** respond by de-registering the key material (see [Section 8.3.3](#)).

3268 In a PKI, key revocation is commonly achieved by including the certificate in a list of revoked  
 3269 certificates (i.e., a CRL). If the PKI uses online status mechanisms (e.g., the Online Certificate  
 3270 Status Protocol [RFC 2560](#)), revocation is achieved by informing the appropriate certificate  
 3271 status server(s). For example, when a private key is compromised, the corresponding public-  
 3272 key certificate **shall** be revoked as soon as possible. Certificate revocation because of a key  
 3273 compromise indicates that the binding between the owner and the key is no longer to be  
 3274 trusted; relying parties **should not** accept the certificate without seriously considering the risks  
 3275 and consulting the organization's policy about this situation. Other revocation reasons indicate  
 3276 that, even though the original binding may still be valid and the key was not compromised, the  
 3277 use of the public key in the certificate **should** be terminated; again, the relying party **should**  
 3278 consult his organization's policy on this issue.

3279 In a symmetric-key system, key revocation could, in theory, be achieved by simply deleting the  
 3280 key from the server's storage. Key revocation for symmetric keys is more commonly achieved  
 3281 by adding the key to a blacklist or compromised key list; this helps satisfy auditing and  
 3282 management requirements.

#### 3283 **8.4 Destroyed Phase**

3284 The keying material is no longer available. All records of its existence may have been deleted,  
 3285 though this is not required. Some organizations may require the retention of certain key  
 3286 metadata elements for audit purposes. For example, if a copy of an ostensibly destroyed key is  
 3287 found in an uncontrolled environment or is later determined to have been compromised,  
 3288 records of the identifier of the key, its type, and its cryptoperiod may be helpful in determining  
 3289 what information was protected under the key and how best to recover from the compromise.

3290 In addition, by keeping a record of the metadata of both destroyed and compromised keys, one  
 3291 will be able to track which keys transitioned through a normal lifecycle and which ones were  
 3292 compromised at some time during their lifecycle. Thus, protected information that is linked to  
 3293 key names that went through the normal lifecycle may still be considered secure, provided that  
 3294 the security strength of the algorithm remains sufficient. However, any protected information  
 3295 that is linked to a key name that has been compromised may itself be compromised.

## 3296 **9 Accountability, Audit, and Survivability**

3297 Systems that process valuable information require controls in order to protect the information  
 3298 from unauthorized disclosure and modification. Cryptographic systems that contain keys and

3299 other cryptographic information are especially critical. Three useful control principles and their  
3300 application to the protection of keying material are highlighted in this section.

### 3301 **9.1 Accountability**

3302 Accountability involves the identification of those entities that have access to, or control of,  
3303 cryptographic keys throughout their lifecycles. Accountability can be an effective tool to help  
3304 prevent key compromises and to reduce the impact of compromises when they are detected.  
3305 Although it is preferred that no humans be able to view keys, as a minimum, the key  
3306 management system **should** account for all individuals who are able to view plaintext  
3307 cryptographic keys. In addition, more sophisticated key-management systems may account for  
3308 all individuals authorized to access or control any cryptographic keys, whether in plaintext or  
3309 ciphertext form. For example, a sophisticated accountability system might be able to determine  
3310 each individual who had control of any given key over its entire lifespan. This would include  
3311 the person in charge of generating the key, the person who used the key to cryptographically  
3312 protect data, anyone else known to have accessed the key, and the person who was responsible  
3313 for destroying the key when it was no longer needed. Even though these individuals may never  
3314 have actually seen the key in plaintext form, they are held accountable for the actions that they  
3315 performed on or with the key.

3316 Accountability provides three significant advantages:

- 3317 1. It aids in the determination of when the compromise could have occurred and what  
3318 individuals could have been involved,
- 3319 2. It tends to protect against compromise, because individuals with access to the key know  
3320 that their access to the key is known, and
- 3321 3. It is very useful in recovering from a detected key compromise to know where the key  
3322 was used and what data or other keys were protected by the compromised key.

3323 Certain principles have been found to be useful in enforcing the accountability of  
3324 cryptographic keys. These principles might not be applicable to all systems or all types of keys.  
3325 Some of the principles apply to long-term keys that are controlled by humans. The principles  
3326 include:

- 3327 a. Uniquely identifying keys;
- 3328 b. Identifying the key user;
- 3329 c. Identifying the dates and times of key use, along with the data that is protected, and
- 3330 d. Identifying other keys that are protected by a symmetric or private key.

### 3331 **9.2 Audit**

3332 Two types of audit **should** be performed on key-management systems:

- 3333 1. The security plan and the procedures that are developed to support the plan **should** be  
3334 periodically audited to ensure that they continue to support the Key Management Policy  
3335 (see [[SP800-57, Part 2](#)]).
- 3336 2. The protective mechanisms employed **should** be periodically reassessed with respect to  
3337 the level of security that they provide and are expected to provide in the future, and that

3338 the mechanisms correctly and effectively support the appropriate policies. New  
3339 technology developments and attacks **should** be taken into consideration.

3340 On a more frequent basis, the actions of the humans that use, operate and maintain the system  
3341 **should** be reviewed to verify that the humans continue to follow established security  
3342 procedures. Strong cryptographic systems can be compromised by lax and inappropriate  
3343 human actions. Highly unusual events **should** be noted and reviewed as possible indicators of  
3344 attempted attacks on the system.

### 3345 **9.3 Key Management System Survivability**

#### 3346 **9.3.1 Backup Keys**

3347 [\[OMB11/01\]](#) notes that encryption is an important tool for protecting the confidentiality of  
3348 disclosure-sensitive information that is entrusted to an agency's care, but that the encryption of  
3349 agency data also presents risks to the availability of information needed for mission  
3350 performance. Agencies are reminded of the need to protect the continuity of their information  
3351 technology operations and agency services when implementing encryption. The guidance  
3352 specifically notes that, without access to the cryptographic keys that are needed to decrypt  
3353 information, organizations risk the loss of their access to that information. Consequently, it is  
3354 prudent to retain backed up or archived copies of the keys necessary to decrypt stored  
3355 enciphered information, including master keys, key-wrapping keys, and the related keying  
3356 material necessary to decrypt encrypted information until there is no longer any requirement  
3357 for access to the underlying plaintext information (see Tables [7](#) and [8](#) in [Section 8.2.2.1](#)).

3358 As the tables in [Section 8.2.2.1](#) show, there are other operational keys in addition to those  
3359 associated with decryption that organizations may need to backup (e.g. public signature-  
3360 verification keys and authorization keys). Backed up or archived copies of keying material  
3361 **shall** be stored in accordance with the provisions of [Section 6](#) in order to protect the  
3362 confidentiality of encrypted information and the integrity of source authentication, integrity  
3363 authentication, and authorization processes.

#### 3364 **9.3.2 Key Recovery**

3365 There are a number of issues associated with key recovery. An extensive discussion is provided  
3366 in [Appendix B](#). Key recovery issues to be addressed include:

- 3367 1. Which keying material, if any, needs to be backed up or archived for later recovery?
- 3368 2. Where will backed-up or archived keying material be stored?
- 3369 3. When will archiving be done (e.g., during key activation or at the end of a key's  
3370 cryptoperiod)?
- 3371 4. Who will be responsible for protecting the backed-up or archived keying material?
- 3372 5. What procedures need to be put in place for storing and recovering the keying material?
- 3373 6. Who can request a recovery of the keying material and under what conditions?
- 3374 7. Who will be notified when a key recovery has taken place and under what conditions?
- 3375 8. What audit or accounting functions need to be performed to ensure that the keying  
3376 material is only provided to authorized entities?

### 3377 9.3.3 System Redundancy/Contingency Planning

3378 Cryptography is a useful tool for preventing unauthorized access to data and/or resources, but  
 3379 when the mechanism fails, it can prevent access by valid users to critical information and  
 3380 processes. Loss or corruption of the only copy of cryptographic keys can deny users access to  
 3381 information. For example, a locksmith can usually defeat a broken physical mechanism, but  
 3382 access to information encrypted by a strong algorithm may not be practical without the correct  
 3383 decryption key. The continuity of an organization's operations can depend heavily on  
 3384 contingency planning for key-management systems that includes a redundancy of critical  
 3385 logical processes and elements, including key management and cryptographic keys.

#### 3386 9.3.3.1 General Principles

3387 Planning for recovery from system failures is an essential management function. Interruptions  
 3388 of critical infrastructure services **should** be anticipated, and planning for maintaining the  
 3389 continuity of operations in support of an organization's primary mission requirements **should**  
 3390 be done. With respect to key management, the following situations are typical of those for  
 3391 which planning is necessary:

- 3392 1. Lost key cards or tokens;
- 3393 2. Forgotten passwords that control access to keys;
- 3394 3. Failure of key input devices (e.g., readers);
- 3395 4. Loss or corruption of the memory media on which keys and/or certificates are stored;
- 3396 5. Compromise of keys;
- 3397 6. Corruption of Certificate Revocation Lists (CRLs) or Compromised Key Lists (CKLs);
- 3398 7. Hardware failure of key or certificate generation, registration, and/or distribution  
 3399 systems, subsystems, or components;
- 3400 8. Power loss requiring re-initialization of key or certificate generation, registration,  
 3401 and/or distribution systems, subsystems, or components;
- 3402 9. Corruption of the memory media necessary for key or certificate generation,  
 3403 registration, and/or distribution systems, subsystems, or components;
- 3404 10. Corruption or loss of key or certificate distribution records and/or audit logs;
- 3405 11. Loss or corruption of the association of keying material to the owners/users of the  
 3406 keying material; and
- 3407 12. Unavailability of older software or hardware that is needed to access keying material or  
 3408 process protected information.

3409 While recovery discussions most commonly focus on the recovery of encrypted data and the  
 3410 restoration of encrypted communication capabilities, planning **should** also address 1) the  
 3411 restoration of access (without creating a temporary loss of access protections) where  
 3412 cryptography is used in access control mechanisms, 2) the restoration of critical processes  
 3413 (without creating a temporary loss of privilege restrictions) where cryptography is used in  
 3414 authorization mechanisms, and 3) the maintenance/restoration of integrity protection in digital  
 3415 signature and message authentication applications.

3416 Contingency planning **should** include 1) providing a means and assigning responsibilities for  
 3417 rapidly recognizing and reporting critical failures; 2) the assignment of responsibilities and the  
 3418 placement of resources for bypassing or replacing failed systems, subsystems, and components;  
 3419 and 3) the establishment of detailed bypass and/or recovery procedures.

3420 Contingency planning includes a full range of integrated logistics support functions. Spare  
 3421 parts (including copies of critical software programs, manuals, and data files) **should** be  
 3422 available (acquired or arranged for) and pre-positioned (or delivery-staged). Emergency  
 3423 maintenance, replacement, and/or bypass instructions **should** be prepared and disseminated to  
 3424 both designated individuals and to an accessible and advertised access point. Designated  
 3425 individuals **should** be trained in their assigned recovery procedures, and all personnel **should**  
 3426 be trained in reporting procedures and workstation-specific recovery procedures.

### 3427 **9.3.3.2 Cryptography and Key Management-specific Recovery Issues**

3428 Cryptographic keys are relatively small components or data elements that often control access  
 3429 to large volumes of information or critical processes. As the Office of Management and Budget  
 3430 has noted in [\[OMB11/01\]](#), “without access to the cryptographic key(s) needed to decrypt  
 3431 information, [an] agency risks losing access to its valuable information.” Agencies are  
 3432 reminded of the need to protect the continuity of their information technology operations and  
 3433 agency services when implementing encryption. The guidance particularly stresses that  
 3434 agencies must address information availability and assurance requirements through appropriate  
 3435 data recovery mechanisms, such as cryptographic key recovery.

3436 Key recovery generally involves some redundancy, or multiple copies of keying material. If  
 3437 one copy of a critical key is lost or corrupted, another copy usually needs to be available in  
 3438 order to recover data and/or restore capabilities. At the same time, the more copies of a key that  
 3439 exist and are distributed to different locations, the more susceptible the key usually is to  
 3440 compromise through penetration of the storage location or subversion of the custodian (e.g.,  
 3441 user, service agent, key production/distribution facility). In this sense, key confidentiality  
 3442 requirements conflict with continuity of operations requirements. Special care needs to be  
 3443 taken to safeguard all copies of keying material, especially symmetric keys and private  
 3444 (asymmetric) keys. More detail regarding contingency plans and planning requirements is  
 3445 provided in Part 2 of this *Recommendation for Key Management* [[SP800-57, Part 2](#)].

### 3446 **9.3.4 Compromise Recovery**

3447 When keying material that is used to protect sensitive information or critical processes is  
 3448 disclosed to unauthorized entities, all of the information and/or processes protected by that  
 3449 keying material becomes immediately subject to disclosure, modification, subversion, and/or  
 3450 denial of service. All compromised keys **shall** be revoked; all affected keys **shall** be replaced;  
 3451 and, where sensitive or critical information or processes are affected, an immediate damage  
 3452 assessment **should** be conducted. Measures necessary to mitigate the consequences of  
 3453 suspected unauthorized access to protected data or processes and to reduce the probability or  
 3454 frequency of future compromises **should** be undertaken.

3455 Where symmetric keys or private (asymmetric) keys are used to protect only a single user’s  
 3456 local information or communications between a single pair of users, the compromise recovery  
 3457 process can be relatively simple and inexpensive. Damage assessment and mitigation measures  
 3458 are often local matters.

3459 On the other hand, where a key is shared by or affects a large number of users, damage can be  
 3460 widespread, and recovery is both complex and expensive. Some examples of keys, the  
 3461 compromise of which might be particularly difficult or expensive to recover from, include the  
 3462 following:

- 3463 1. A CA's private signature key, especially if it is used to sign a root certificate in a  
 3464 public-key infrastructure;
- 3465 2. A symmetric key-wrapping key shared by a large number of users;
- 3466 3. A private asymmetric key-transport key shared by a large number of users;
- 3467 4. A master key used in the derivation of keys by a large number of users;
- 3468 5. A symmetric data-encryption key used to encrypt data in a large distributed database;
- 3469 6. A symmetric key shared by a large number of communications network participants;  
 3470 and
- 3471 7. A key used to protect a large number of stored keys.

3472 In all of these cases, a large number of key owners or relying parties (e.g., all parties authorized  
 3473 to use the secret key of a symmetric-key algorithm or the public key of an asymmetric-key  
 3474 algorithm) would need to be immediately notified of the compromise. The inclusion of the key  
 3475 identifier on a Compromised Key List (CKL) or the certificate serial number on a Certificate  
 3476 Revocation List (CRL) to be published at a later date might not be sufficient. This means that a  
 3477 list of (the most-likely) affected entities might need to be maintained, and a means for  
 3478 communicating news of the compromise would be required. Particularly in the case of the  
 3479 compromise of a symmetric key, news of the compromise and the replacement of keys **should**  
 3480 be sent only to the affected entities so as not to encourage others to exploit the situation.

3481 In all of these cases, a secure path for replacing the compromised keys is required. In order to  
 3482 permit rapid restoration of service, an automated (e.g., over-the-air or network-based)  
 3483 replacement path is preferred (see [Section 8.2.3](#)). In some cases, however, there may be no  
 3484 practical alternative to manual distribution (e.g., the compromise of a root CA's private key). A  
 3485 contingency distribution of alternate keys may help restore service rapidly in some  
 3486 circumstances (e.g., the compromise of a widely held symmetric key), but the possibility of a  
 3487 simultaneous compromise of operational and contingency keys would need to be considered.

3488 Damage assessment can be extraordinarily complex, particularly in cases such as the  
 3489 compromise and replacement of CA private keys, widely used transport keys, and keys used by  
 3490 many users of large distributed databases.

## 3491 **10 Key Management Specifications for Cryptographic** 3492 **Devices or Applications**

3493 Key management is often an afterthought in the cryptographic development process. As a  
 3494 result, cryptographic subsystems often fail to support the key management functionality and  
 3495 protocols that are necessary to provide adequate security with the minimum necessary  
 3496 reduction in operational efficiency. All cryptographic development activities **should** involve  
 3497 key management planning and specification (see [\[SP800-57, Part 2\]](#)) by those managers

3498 responsible for the secure implementation of cryptography into an information system. Key  
3499 management planning **should** begin during the initial conceptual/development stages of the  
3500 cryptographic development lifecycle, or during the initial discussion stages for the application  
3501 of existing cryptographic components into information systems and networks. The  
3502 specifications that result from the planning activities **shall** be consistent with NIST key  
3503 management guidance (see [\[SP800-130\]](#) and [\[SP800152\]](#)).

3504 For cryptographic development efforts, a key specification and acquisition planning process  
3505 **should** begin as soon as the candidate algorithm(s) and, if appropriate, keying material media  
3506 and format have been identified. Key management considerations may affect algorithm choice,  
3507 due to operational efficiency considerations for anticipated applications. For the application of  
3508 existing cryptographic mechanisms for which no key-management specification exists, the  
3509 planning and specification processes **should** begin during device and source selection, and  
3510 continue through acquisition and installation.

3511 The types of key-management components that are required for a specific cryptographic device  
3512 and/or for suites of devices used by organizations **should** be standardized to the maximum  
3513 possible extent, and new cryptographic device-development efforts **shall** comply with NIST  
3514 key-management recommendations. Accordingly, NIST criteria for the security, accuracy, and  
3515 utility of key-management components in electronic and physical forms **shall** be met. Where  
3516 the criteria for security, accuracy, and utility can be satisfied with standard key-management  
3517 components (e.g., PKI), the use of those compliant components is encouraged. A developer  
3518 may choose to employ non-compliant key management as a result of security, accuracy, utility,  
3519 or cost considerations. However, such developments **should** conform as closely as possible to  
3520 established key-management recommendations.

### 3521 **10.1 Key Management Specification Description/Purpose**

3522 The Key Management Specification is the document that describes the key management  
3523 components that may be required to operate a cryptographic device throughout its lifetime.  
3524 Where applicable, the Key Management Specification also describes key management  
3525 components that are provided by a cryptographic device. The Key Management Specification  
3526 documents the capabilities that the cryptographic application requires from key sources (e.g.,  
3527 the Key Management Infrastructure (KMI) described in Part 2 of this *Recommendation for Key*  
3528 *Management* [[SP800-57, Part 2](#)]).

### 3529 **10.2 Content of the Key Management Specification**

3530 The level of detail required for each section of the Key Management Specification can be  
3531 tailored, depending upon the complexity of the device or application for which the Key  
3532 Management Specification is being written. The Key Management Specification **should**  
3533 contain a title page that includes the device identifier, and the developer's or integrator's  
3534 identifier. A revision page, a list of reference documents, a table of contents, and a definition of  
3535 abbreviations and acronyms page **should** also be included. The terminology used in a Key  
3536 Management Specification **shall** be in accordance with the terms defined in appropriate NIST  
3537 standards and guidelines. Unless the information is tightly controlled, the Key Management  
3538 Specification **should not** contain proprietary or sensitive information. [Note: If the  
3539 cryptographic application is supported by a PKI, a statement to that effect **should** be included  
3540 in the appropriate Key Management Specification sections below.]

### 3541 **10.2.1 Cryptographic Application**

3542 A Cryptographic Application section provides a basis for the development of the rest of the  
 3543 Key Management Specification. The Cryptographic Application section provides a brief  
 3544 description of the cryptographic application or proposed employment of the cryptographic  
 3545 device. This includes the purpose or use of the cryptographic device (or application of a  
 3546 cryptographic device), and whether it is a new cryptographic device, a modification of an  
 3547 existing cryptographic device, or an existing cryptographic device for which a Key  
 3548 Management Specification does not exist. A brief description of the security services  
 3549 (confidentiality, integrity authentication, source authentication, non-repudiation support, access  
 3550 control, and availability) that the cryptographic device/application provides **should** be  
 3551 included. Information concerning long-term and potential interim key-management support  
 3552 (key-management components) for the cryptographic application **should** be provided.

### 3553 **10.2.2 Communications Environment**

3554 A Communications Environment section provides a brief description of the communications  
 3555 environment in which the cryptographic device is designed to operate. Some examples of  
 3556 communications environments include:

- 3557 1. Data networks (e.g., intranet, Internet, VPN);
- 3558 2. Wired communications (e.g., landline, dedicated or shared switching resources); and
- 3559 3. Wireless communications (e.g., cell phones).

3560 The environment may also include any anticipated access controls on communications  
 3561 resources, data sensitivity, privacy issues, etc.

### 3562 **10.2.3 Key Management Component Requirements**

3563 A Key Management Component Requirements section describes the types and logical structure  
 3564 of the keying material required for the operation of the cryptographic device. Cryptographic  
 3565 applications using public-key certificates (e.g., X.509 certificates) **should** describe the types of  
 3566 certificates supported. The following information **should** be included:

- 3567 1. The different keying material classes or types required, supported, and/or generated  
 3568 (e.g., for PKI: CA, signature, key establishment, and authentication);
- 3569 2. The key management algorithm(s) (the applicable **approved** algorithms);
- 3570 3. The keying material format(s) (reference any existing key specification, if known);
- 3571 4. The set of acceptable PKI policies (as applicable); and
- 3572 5. The tokens to be used.

3573 The description of the key-management component format may reference a key specification  
 3574 for an existing cryptographic device. If the format of the key-management components is not  
 3575 already specified, then the format and medium **should** be specified in the Key Management  
 3576 Specification.

### 3577 **10.2.4 Key Management Component Generation**

3578 The Key Management Specification **should** include a description of the requirements for the  
 3579 generation of key-management components by the cryptographic device for which the Key

3580 Management Specification is written. If the cryptographic device does not provide generation  
3581 capabilities, the key-management components that will be required from external sources  
3582 **should** be identified.

#### 3583 **10.2.5 Key Management Component Distribution**

3584 When a device supports the automated distribution of keying material, the Key Management  
3585 Specification **should** include a description of the distribution method(s) (where employed)  
3586 used for keying material supported by the device. The distribution plan may describe the  
3587 circumstances under which the key-management components are encrypted or in plaintext,  
3588 their physical form (electronic, paper, etc.), and how they are identified during the distribution  
3589 process. In the case of a dependence on manual distribution, the dependence and any handling  
3590 assumptions regarding keying material **should** be stated.

#### 3591 **10.2.6 Keying Material Storage**

3592 The Key Management Specification **should** address how the cryptographic device or  
3593 application for which the Key Management Specification is being written stores information,  
3594 and how the keying material is identified during its storage life (e.g., Distinguished Name).  
3595 The storage capacity capabilities for information **should** be included.

#### 3596 **10.2.7 Access Control**

3597 The Key Management Specification **should** address how access to the cryptographic device  
3598 components and functions is to be authorized, controlled, and validated to request, generate,  
3599 handle, distribute, store, and/or use keying material. Any use of passwords and personal  
3600 identification numbers (PINs) **should** be included. For PKI cryptographic applications, role  
3601 and identity-based privileging, and the use of any tokens **should** be described.

#### 3602 **10.2.8 Accounting**

3603 The Key Management Specification **should** describe any device or application support for the  
3604 accounting of the keying material. Any support for or outputs to logs used to support the  
3605 tracking of key-management component generation, distribution, storage, use and/or  
3606 destruction **should** be detailed. The use of appropriate privileging to support the control of  
3607 keying material that is used by the cryptographic application **should** also be described, in  
3608 addition to the directory capabilities used to support PKI cryptographic applications, if  
3609 applicable. The Key Management Specification **shall** identify where human and automated  
3610 tracking actions are required and where multi-party control is required, if applicable. [Section](#)  
3611 [9.1](#) of this Recommendation provides accountability guidance.

#### 3612 **10.2.9 Compromise Management and Recovery**

3613 The Key Management Specification **should** address any support for the restoration of protected  
3614 communications in the event of the compromise of keying material used by the cryptographic  
3615 device/application. The recovery-process description **should** include the methods for re-  
3616 keying. For PKI cryptographic applications, the implementation of Certificate Revocation Lists  
3617 (CRLs) and Compromised Key Lists (CKLs) **should** be detailed. For system specifications, a  
3618 description of how certificates will be reissued and renewed within the cryptographic  
3619 application **should** also be included. General compromise-recovery guidance is provided in  
3620 [Section 9.3.4](#) of this Recommendation.

3621 **10.2.10 Key Recovery**

3622 The Key Management Specification **should** include a description of product support or system  
3623 mechanisms for effecting key recovery. Key recovery addresses how unavailable encryption  
3624 keys can be recovered. System developers **should** include a discussion of the generation,  
3625 storage, and access to long-term storage keys in the key-recovery-process description. The  
3626 process of transitioning from the current to future long-term storage keys **should** also be  
3627 described. General contingency planning guidance is provided in [Section 9.3.3](#) of this  
3628 Recommendation. Key recovery is treated in detail in [Appendix B](#).

3629

## 3630 **APPENDIX A: Cryptographic and Non-cryptographic** 3631 **Integrity and Source Authentication Mechanisms**

3632 Integrity and source authentication services are particularly important in protocols that include  
 3633 key management. When integrity or source authentication services are discussed in this  
 3634 Recommendation, they are afforded by “strong” cryptographic integrity or source  
 3635 authentication mechanisms. Secure communications and key management are typically  
 3636 provided using a communication protocol that offers certain services, such as integrity  
 3637 protection or a “reliable” transport service<sup>48</sup>. However, the integrity protection or reliable  
 3638 transport services of communication protocols are not necessarily adequate for cryptographic  
 3639 applications, particularly for key management, and there might be confusion about the meaning  
 3640 of terms such as “integrity”.

3641 All communication channels have some noise (i.e., unintentional errors inserted by the  
 3642 transmission media), and other factors, such as network congestion, can cause network  
 3643 packets<sup>49</sup> to be lost. Therefore, integrity protection and reliable transport services for  
 3644 communication protocols are designed to function over a channel with certain worst-case noise  
 3645 characteristics. Transmission bit errors are typically detected using 1) a non-cryptographic  
 3646 checksum<sup>50</sup> to detect transmission errors in a packet, and 2) a packet counter that is used to  
 3647 detect lost packets. A receiving entity that detects damaged packets (i.e., packets that contain  
 3648 bit errors) or lost packets may request the sender to retransmit them. The non-cryptographic  
 3649 checksums are generally effective at detecting transmission noise. For example, the common  
 3650 CRC-32 checksum algorithm used in local-area network applications detects all error bursts  
 3651 with a span of less than 32 bits, and detects longer random bursts with a  $2^{-32}$  failure probability.  
 3652 However, the non-cryptographic CRC-32 checksum does not detect the swapping of 32-bit  
 3653 message words, and specific errors in particular message bits cause predictable changes in the  
 3654 CRC-32 checksum. The sophisticated attacker can take advantage of this to create altered  
 3655 messages that pass the CRC-32 integrity checks, even, in some cases, when the message is  
 3656 encrypted.

3657 Forward error-correcting codes are a subset of non-cryptographic checksums that can be used  
 3658 to correct a limited number of errors without retransmission. These codes may be used as  
 3659 checksums, depending on the application and noise properties of the channel.

3660 Cryptographic integrity authentication mechanisms (e.g., MACs or digital signatures), on the  
 3661 other hand, protect against an active, intelligent attacker who might attempt to disguise his  
 3662 attack as noise. Typically, the bits altered by the attacker are not random; they are targeted at

---

<sup>48</sup> A means of transmitting information within a network using protocols that provide assurances that the information is received correctly.

<sup>49</sup> A formatted unit of data used to send messages across a network. Messages may be divided into multiple packets for transmission efficiency.

<sup>50</sup> Checksum: an algorithm that uses the bits in the transmission to create a checksum value. The checksum value is normally sent in the transmission. The receiver re-computes the checksum value using the bits in the received transmission, and compares the received checksum value with the computed value to determine whether or not the transmission was correctly received. A non-cryptographic checksum algorithm uses a well-known algorithm without secret information (i.e., a cryptographic key).

3663 system properties and vulnerabilities. Cryptographic integrity authentication mechanisms are  
 3664 effective in detecting random noise events, but they also detect the more systematic deliberate  
 3665 attacks. Cryptographic hash functions, such as SHA-256 are designed to make every bit of the  
 3666 hash value a complex, nonlinear function of every bit of the message text, and to make it  
 3667 impractical to find two messages that hash to the same value. On average, it is necessary to  
 3668 perform  $2^{128}$  SHA-256 hash operations to find two messages that hash to the same value, and it  
 3669 is much harder to find another message whose SHA-256 hash is the same value as the hash of  
 3670 any given message. Cryptographic message authentication code (MAC) algorithms employ  
 3671 hash functions or symmetric encryption algorithms and keys to authenticate the source of a  
 3672 message and to protect the integrity of a message (i.e., to detect errors). Digital signatures use  
 3673 public-key algorithms and hash functions to provide both integrity and source authentication  
 3674 services. Compared to non-cryptographic integrity or source authentication mechanisms, these  
 3675 cryptographic services are usually computationally more expensive; this seems to be  
 3676 unavoidable, since cryptographic protections must also resist deliberate attacks by  
 3677 knowledgeable adversaries with substantial resources.

3678 Cryptographic and non-cryptographic integrity authentication mechanisms may be used  
 3679 together. For example, consider the TLS protocol (see [\[SP800-52\]](#)). In TLS, a client and a  
 3680 server can authenticate the identity of each other, establish a shared "master key" and transfer  
 3681 encrypted payload data. Every step in the entire TLS protocol run is protected by cryptographic  
 3682 integrity and source authentication mechanisms, and the payload is usually encrypted. Like  
 3683 most cryptographic protocols, TLS will detect any attack or noise event that alters any part of  
 3684 the protocol run with a given probability. However, TLS has no error-recovery protocol. If an  
 3685 error is detected, the protocol run is simply terminated. Starting a new TLS protocol run is  
 3686 quite expensive. Therefore, TLS requires a "reliable" transport service, typically the Internet  
 3687 Transport Control Protocol (TCP), to handle and recover from ordinary network transmission  
 3688 errors. TLS will detect errors caused by an attack or noise event, but has no mechanism to  
 3689 recover from them. TCP will generally detect such errors on a packet-by-packet basis and  
 3690 recover from them by retransmission of individual packets, before delivering the data to TLS.  
 3691 Both TLS and TCP have integrity authentication mechanisms, but a sophisticated attacker  
 3692 could easily fool the weaker non-cryptographic checksums of TCP. However, because of the  
 3693 cryptographic integrity authentication mechanism provided in TLS, the attack is thwarted.

3694 There are some interactions between cryptographic and non-cryptographic integrity or error-  
 3695 correction mechanisms that users and protocol designers must take into account. For example,  
 3696 many encryption modes expand ciphertext errors: a single bit error in the ciphertext can change  
 3697 an entire block or more of the resulting plaintext. If forward error correction is applied before  
 3698 encryption, and errors are inserted in the ciphertext during transmission, the error expansion  
 3699 during the decryption might "overwhelm" the error-correction mechanism, making the errors  
 3700 uncorrectable. Therefore, it is preferable to apply the forward error-correction mechanism after  
 3701 the encryption process. This will allow the correction of errors by the receiving entity's system  
 3702 before the ciphertext is decrypted, resulting in "correct" plaintext.

3703 Interactions between cryptographic and non-cryptographic mechanisms can also result in  
 3704 security vulnerabilities. One classic way this occurs is with protocols that use stream ciphers<sup>51</sup>

---

<sup>51</sup> Stream ciphers encrypt and decrypt one element (e.g., bit or byte) at a time. There are no **approved** algorithms specifically designated as stream ciphers. However, some of the cryptographic modes defined in [\[SP 800-38\]](#) can be used with a symmetric block cipher algorithm, such as AES, to perform the function of a stream cipher.

3705 with non-cryptographic checksums (e.g. CRC-32) that are computed over the plaintext data  
3706 and that acknowledge good packets. An attacker can copy the encrypted packet, selectively  
3707 modify individual ciphertext bits, selectively change bits in the CRC, and then send the packet.  
3708 Using the protocol's acknowledgement mechanism, the attacker can determine when the CRC  
3709 is correct, and therefore, determine certain bits of the underlying plaintext. At least one widely  
3710 used wireless-encryption protocol has been broken with such an attack.

3711

## 3712 **APPENDIX B: Key Recovery**

3713 Federal agencies have a responsibility to protect the information contained in, processed by  
 3714 and transmitted between their information technology systems. Cryptographic techniques are  
 3715 often used as part of this process. These techniques are used to provide confidentiality,  
 3716 integrity authentication, source authentication, non-repudiation support or access control.  
 3717 Policies **shall** be established to address the protection and continued accessibility of  
 3718 cryptographically protected information, and procedures **shall** be in place to ensure that the  
 3719 information remains viable during its lifetime. When cryptographic keying material is used to  
 3720 protect the information, this same keying material may need to be available to remove (e.g.,  
 3721 decrypt) or verify (e.g., verify the MAC) those protections.

3722 In many cases, the keying material used for cryptographic processes might not be readily  
 3723 available. This might be the case for a number of reasons, including:

- 3724 1. The cryptoperiod of the key has expired, and the keying material is no longer in  
 3725 operational storage,
- 3726 2. The keying material has been corrupted (e.g., the system has crashed or a virus has  
 3727 modified the saved keying material in operational storage), or
- 3728 3. The owner of the keying material is not available, and the owner's organization needs  
 3729 to obtain the plaintext information.

3730 In order to have this keying material available when required, the keying material needs to be  
 3731 saved somewhere or to be constructible (e.g., derivable) from other available keying material.  
 3732 The process of re-acquiring the keying material is called key recovery. Key recovery is often  
 3733 used as one method of information recovery when the plaintext information needs to be  
 3734 recovered from encrypted information. However, keying material or other related information  
 3735 may need to be recovered for other reasons, such as the corruption of keying material in normal  
 3736 operational storage (see [Section 8.2.1](#)), e.g., the verification of MACs for archived documents.  
 3737 Key recovery may also be appropriate for situations in which it is easier or faster to recover the  
 3738 keying material than it is to generate and distribute new keying material.

3739 However, there are applications that may not need to save the keying material for an extended  
 3740 time because of other procedures to recover an operational capability when the keying material  
 3741 or the information protected by the keying material becomes inaccessible. Applications of this  
 3742 type could include telecommunications where the transmitted information could be resent, or  
 3743 applications that could quickly derive, or acquire and distribute new keying material.

3744 It is the responsibility of an organization to determine whether or not the recovery of keying  
 3745 material is required for their application. The decision as to whether key recovery is required  
 3746 **should** be made on a case-by-case basis, and this decision **should** be reflected in the Key  
 3747 Management Policy and the Key Management Practices Statement (see [\[SP800-57, Part 2\]](#)). If  
 3748 the decision is made to provide key recovery, the appropriate method of key recovery **should**  
 3749 be selected, designed and implemented, based on the type of keying material to be recovered;  
 3750 an appropriate entity needs to be selected to maintain the backup or archive database and  
 3751 manage the key recovery process.

3752 If the decision is made to provide key recovery for a key, all information associated with that  
 3753 key **shall** also be recoverable (see [Table 5 in Section 6](#)).

### 3754 **B.1 Recovery from Stored Keying Material**

3755 The primary purpose of the back up or archiving of keying material is to be able to recover that  
 3756 material when it is not otherwise available. For example, encrypted information cannot be  
 3757 transformed back into plaintext information if the decryption key is lost or modified; the  
 3758 integrity of data cannot be authenticated if the key used to verify the integrity of that data is not  
 3759 available. The key recovery process retrieves the keying material from backup or archive  
 3760 storage, and places it either in a device or module, or in other immediately accessible storage  
 3761 (see [Section 8.3.1](#)).

### 3762 **B.2 Recovery by Reconstruction of Keying Material**

3763 Some keying material may be recovered by reconstructing or re-deriving the keying material  
 3764 from other available keying material – the “base” keying material (e.g., a master key for a key-  
 3765 derivation method). The base keying material **shall** be available in normal operational storage  
 3766 (see [Section 8.2.1](#)), backup storage (see [Section 8.2.2.1](#)) or archive storage (see [Section 8.3.1](#)).

### 3767 **B.3 Conditions Under Which Keying Material Needs to be Recoverable**

3768 The decision as to whether to back up or archive keying material for possible key recovery  
 3769 **should** be made on a case-by-case basis. The decision **should** be based on the list provided in  
 3770 [Section 8.2.2.2](#).

3771 When the key-recovery operation is requested by the key’s owner, the following actions **shall**  
 3772 be taken:

- 3773 1. If the key is lost with the possibility of having been compromised, then the key **shall** be  
 3774 replaced as soon as possible after recovery in order to limit the exposure of the  
 3775 recovered key and the data it protects (see [Section 8.2.3.1](#)). This requires reapplying the  
 3776 protection on the protected data using the new key. For example, suppose that the key  
 3777 that was used to encrypt data ( $Key_A$ ) has been misplaced in a manner in which it could  
 3778 have been compromised. As soon as possible after  $Key_A$  is recovered,  $Key_A$  **shall** be used  
 3779 to decrypt the data, and the data **shall** be re-encrypted under a new key ( $Key_B$ ).  $Key_B$   
 3780 **shall** have no relationship to  $Key_A$  (e.g.,  $Key_B$  **shall not** be an update of  $Key_A$ ).
- 3781 2. If the key becomes inaccessible or has been modified, but compromise is not suspected,  
 3782 then the key may be recovered. No further action is required (e.g., re-encrypting the  
 3783 data). For example, if the key becomes inaccessible because the system containing the  
 3784 key crashes, or the key is inadvertently overwritten, and a compromise is not suspected,  
 3785 then the key may simply be restored.

3786 The following subsections provide discussions to assist an organization in determining whether  
 3787 or not key recovery is needed. Although the following discussions address only the  
 3788 recoverability of keys, any related information (e.g., the metadata associated with the key)  
 3789 **shall** also be recoverable.

### 3790 **B.3.1 Signature Key Pairs**

3791 The private key of a signature key pair (the private signature key) is used by the owner of the  
 3792 key pair to apply digital signatures to information. The corresponding public key (the public  
 3793 signature-verification key) is used by relying entities to verify the digital signature.

#### 3794 **B.3.1.1 Private Signature Keys**

3795 Private signature keys **shall not** be archived (see [Table 9 in Section 8.3.1](#)). Key backup is not  
 3796 usually desirable for the private key of a signing key pair, since support for the non-  
 3797 repudiability of the signature comes into question. However, exceptions may exist. For  
 3798 example, replacing the private signature key and having its corresponding public signature-  
 3799 verification key distributed (in accordance with [Section 8.1.5.1](#)) in a timely manner may not be  
 3800 possible under some circumstances, so recovering the private signature key from backup  
 3801 storage may be justified. This may be the case, for example, for the private signature key of a  
 3802 CA.

3803 If backup is considered for the private signature key, an assessment **should** be made as to its  
 3804 importance and the time needed to recover the key, as opposed to the time needed to generate a  
 3805 new key pair, and certify and distribute a new public signature-verification key. If a private  
 3806 signature key is backed up, the private signature key **shall** be recovered using a highly secure  
 3807 method. Depending on circumstances, the key **should** be recovered for immediate use only,  
 3808 and then **shall** be replaced as soon after the recovery process as possible.

3809 Instead of backing up the private signature key, a second private signature key and  
 3810 corresponding public key could be generated, and the public key distributed in accordance with  
 3811 [Section 8.1.5.1](#) for use if the primary private signature key becomes unavailable.

#### 3812 **B.3.1.2 Public Signature-verification Keys**

3813 It is appropriate to backup or archive a public signature-verification key for as long as required  
 3814 in order to verify the information signed by the corresponding private signature key. In the case  
 3815 of a public key that has been certified (e.g., by a Certification Authority), saving the public-key  
 3816 certificate would be an appropriate form of storing the public key; backup or archive storage  
 3817 may be provided by the infrastructure (e.g., by a certificate repository). The public key **should**  
 3818 be stored in backup storage until the end of the private key's cryptoperiod, and **should** be  
 3819 stored in archive storage as long as required for the verification of signed data.

### 3820 **B.3.2 Symmetric Authentication Keys**

3821 A symmetric authentication key is used to provide assurance of the integrity and source of  
 3822 information. A symmetric authentication key can be used:

- 3823 1. By an originator to create a message authentication code (MAC) that can be verified at  
 3824 a later time to determine the integrity (and possibly the source) of the authenticated  
 3825 information; the authenticated information and its MAC could then be stored for later  
 3826 retrieval or transmitted to another entity,
- 3827 2. By an entity that retrieves the authenticated information and the MAC from storage to  
 3828 determine the integrity of the stored information (Note: This is not a communication  
 3829 application),

- 3830 3. Immediately upon receipt by a receiving entity to determine the integrity of transmitted  
 3831 information and the source of that information (the received MAC and the associated  
 3832 authenticated information may or may not be subsequently stored), or
- 3833 4. By a receiving and retrieving entity to determine the integrity and source of information  
 3834 that has been received and subsequently stored using the same MAC (and the same  
 3835 authentication key); checking the MAC may not be performed prior to storage.

3836 For each of the above cases, a decision to provide a key recovery capability **should** be made,  
 3837 based on the following considerations.

3838 **In case 1**, the symmetric authentication key need not be backed up or archived if the  
 3839 originator can establish a new authentication key prior to computing the MAC, making  
 3840 the key available to any entity that would need to subsequently verify the information  
 3841 that is authenticated using this new key. If a new authentication key cannot be obtained  
 3842 in a timely manner, then the authentication key **should** be backed up or archived.

3843 **In case 2**, the symmetric authentication key **should** be backed up or archived for as  
 3844 long as the integrity and source of the information needs to be determined.

3845 **In case 3**, the symmetric authentication key need not be backed up or archived if the  
 3846 authentication key can be resent to the recipient. In this case, establishing and  
 3847 distributing a new symmetric authentication key, rather than reusing the “lost” key, is  
 3848 also acceptable; a new MAC would need to be computed on the information using the  
 3849 new authentication key. Otherwise, the symmetric authentication key **should** be backed  
 3850 up. Archiving the authentication key is not appropriate if the MAC and the  
 3851 authenticated information are not subsequently stored, since the use of the key for both  
 3852 applying and checking the MAC would be discontinued at the end of the key's  
 3853 cryptoperiod. If the MAC and the authenticated information are subsequently stored,  
 3854 then the symmetric authentication key **should** be backed up or archived for as long as  
 3855 the integrity and source of the information needs to be determined.

3856 **In case 4**, the symmetric authentication key **should** be backed up or archived for as  
 3857 long as the integrity and source of the information needs to be determined.

3858 The symmetric authentication key may be stored in backup storage for the cryptoperiod of the  
 3859 key, and in archive storage until no longer required. If the authentication key is recovered by  
 3860 reconstruction, the “base” key (e.g., the master key for a key-derivation method) may be stored  
 3861 in normal operational storage or backup storage for the cryptoperiod of the base key, and in  
 3862 archive storage until no longer required.

### 3863 **B.3.3 Authentication Key Pairs**

3864 A public authentication key is used by a receiving entity to obtain assurance of the identity of  
 3865 the originating entity. The corresponding private authentication key is used by the originating  
 3866 entity to provide this assurance to a receiving entity by computing a digital signature on the  
 3867 information. This key pair may not provide support for non-repudiation.

#### 3868 **B.3.3.1 Public Authentication Keys**

3869 It is appropriate to store a public authentication key in either backup or archive storage for as  
 3870 long as required to verify the identity of the entity that is participating in an authenticated  
 3871 communication session.

3872 In the case of a public key that has been certified (e.g., by a Certification Authority), saving the  
 3873 public-key certificate would be an appropriate form of storing the public key; backup or  
 3874 archive storage may be provided by the infrastructure (e.g., by a certificate repository). The  
 3875 public key may be stored in backup storage until the end of the private key's cryptoperiod, and  
 3876 may be stored in archive storage as long as required.

### 3877 **B.3.3.2 Private Authentication Keys**

3878 The private key is used to establish the identity of an entity who is participating in an  
 3879 authenticated communication session. The private authentication key need not be backed up if  
 3880 a new key pair can be generated and distributed in accordance with [Section 8.1.5.1](#) in a timely  
 3881 manner. However, if a new key pair cannot be generated quickly, the private key **should** be  
 3882 stored in backup storage during the cryptoperiod of the private key. The private key **shall not**  
 3883 be stored in archive storage.

### 3884 **B.3.4 Symmetric Data-Encryption Keys**

3885 A symmetric data-encryption key is used to protect the confidentiality of stored or transmitted  
 3886 information or both. The same key is used initially to encrypt the plaintext information to be  
 3887 protected, and later to decrypt the encrypted information (i.e., the ciphertext), thus obtaining  
 3888 the original plaintext.

3889 The key needs to be available for as long as any information that is encrypted using that key  
 3890 may need to be decrypted. Therefore, the key **should** be backed up or archived during this  
 3891 period.

3892 In order to allow key recovery, the symmetric data-encryption key **should** be stored in backup  
 3893 storage during the cryptoperiod of the key, and **should** be stored in archive storage, if required.  
 3894 In many cases, the key is protected and stored with the encrypted data. When archived, the key  
 3895 is wrapped (i.e., encrypted) by an archive-encryption key or by a symmetric key-wrapping key  
 3896 that is wrapped by a protected archive-encryption key.

3897 A symmetric-data encryption key that is used only for transmission is used by an originating  
 3898 entity to encrypt information, and by the receiving entity to decrypt the information  
 3899 immediately upon receipt. If the data-encryption key is lost or corrupted, and a new data-  
 3900 encryption key can be easily obtained by the originating and receiving entities, then the key  
 3901 need not be backed up. However, if the key cannot be easily replaced by a new key, then the  
 3902 key **should** be backed up if the information to be exchanged is of sufficient importance. The  
 3903 data-encryption key may not need to be archived when used for transmission only.

### 3904 **B.3.5 Symmetric Key-Wrapping Keys**

3905 A symmetric key-wrapping key is used to wrap (i.e., encrypt) keying material that is to be  
 3906 protected, and may be used to protect multiple sets of keying material. The protected keying  
 3907 material is then transmitted or stored or both.

3908 If a symmetric key-wrapping key is used only to transmit keying material, and the key-  
 3909 wrapping key becomes unavailable (e.g., is lost or corrupted), it may be possible to either  
 3910 resend the key-wrapping key, or to establish a new key-wrapping key and use it to resend the  
 3911 keying material. If this is possible within a reasonable timeframe, backup of the key-wrapping  
 3912 key is not necessary. If the key-wrapping key cannot be resent, or a new key-wrapping key

3913 cannot be readily obtained, backup of the key-wrapping key **should** be considered. The archive  
3914 of a key-wrapping key that is only used to transmit keying material may not be necessary.

3915 If a symmetric key-wrapping key is used to protect keying material in storage, then the key-  
3916 wrapping key **should** be backed up or archived for as long as the protected keying material  
3917 may need to be accessed.

### 3918 **B.3.6 Random Number Generation Keys**

3919 A key used for deterministic random bit generation **shall not** be backed up or archived. If this  
3920 key is lost or modified, it **shall** be replaced with a new key.

### 3921 **B.3.7 Symmetric Master Keys**

3922 A symmetric master key is normally used to derive one or more other keys. It **shall not** be used  
3923 for any other purpose.

3924 The determination as to whether or not a symmetric master key needs to be backed up or  
3925 archived depends on a number of factors:

3926 1. How easy is it to establish a new symmetric master key? If the master key is distributed  
3927 manually (e.g., in smart cards or in hard copy by receipted mail), the master key **should**  
3928 be backed up or archived. If a new master key can be easily and quickly established  
3929 using automated key-establishment protocols, then the backup or archiving of the  
3930 master key may not be necessary or desirable, depending on the application.

3931 2. Are the derived keys recoverable without the use of the symmetric master key? If the  
3932 derived keys do not need to be backed up or archived (e.g., because of their use) or  
3933 recovery of the derived keys does not depend on reconstruction from the master key  
3934 (e.g., the derived keys are stored in an encrypted form), then the backup or archiving of  
3935 the master key may not be desirable. If the derived keys need to be backed up or  
3936 archived, and the method of key recovery requires a reconstruction of the derived key  
3937 from the master key, then the master key **should** be backed up or archived.

### 3938 **B.3.8 Key-Transport Key Pairs**

3939 A key-transport key pair may be used to transport keying material from an originating entity to  
3940 a receiving entity during communications. The transported keying material could be stored in  
3941 its encrypted form for decryption at a later time. The originating entity in a communication  
3942 uses the public key to encrypt the keying material; the receiving entity (or the entity retrieving  
3943 the stored keying material) uses the private key to decrypt the encrypted keying material.

#### 3944 **B.3.8.1 Private Key-Transport Keys**

3945 If a key-transport key pair is used during communications without storing the encrypted keying  
3946 material, then the private key-transport key does not need to be backed up if a replacement key  
3947 pair can be generated and distributed in a timely fashion. Alternatively, one or more additional  
3948 key pairs could be made available (i.e., already generated and distributed). Otherwise, the  
3949 private key **should** be backed up. The private key-transport key may be archived.

3950 If the transported keying material is stored in its encrypted form, then the private key-transport  
3951 key **should** be backed up or archived for as long as the protected keying material may need to  
3952 be accessed.

### 3953 **B.3.8.2 Public Key Transport Keys**

3954 Backup or archiving of the public key may be done, but may not be necessary.

3955 If the sending entity (the originating entity in a communications) loses the public key-transport  
3956 key or determines that the key has been corrupted, the key can be reacquired from the key pair  
3957 owner or by obtaining the public-key certificate containing the public key (if the public key  
3958 was certified).

3959 If the entity that applies the cryptographic protection to keying material that is to be stored  
3960 determines that the public key-transport key has been lost or corrupted, the entity may recover  
3961 in one of the following ways:

- 3962 1. If the public key has been certified and is stored elsewhere within the infrastructure,  
3963 then the certificate can be requested.
- 3964 2. If some other entity knows the public key (e.g., the owner of the key pair), the key can  
3965 be requested from this other entity.
- 3966 3. If the private key is known, then the public key can be recomputed.
- 3967 4. A new key pair can be generated.

### 3968 **B.3.9 Symmetric Key Agreement Keys**

3969 Symmetric key-agreement keys are used to establish keying material (e.g., symmetric key-  
3970 wrapping keys, symmetric data-encryption keys, or symmetric authentication keys). Each key-  
3971 agreement key is shared between two or more entities. If these keys are distributed manually  
3972 (e.g., in a key loading device or by receipted mail), then the symmetric key-agreement key  
3973 **should** be backed up. If an automated means is available for quickly establishing new keys  
3974 (e.g., a key-transport mechanism can be used to establish a new symmetric key-agreement  
3975 key), then a symmetric key-agreement key need not be backed up.

3976 Symmetric key-agreement keys may be archived.

### 3977 **B.3.10 Static Key-Agreement Key Pairs**

3978 Static key-agreement key pairs are used to establish shared secrets between entities (see  
3979 [\[SP800-56A\]](#) and [\[SP800-56B\]](#)), sometimes in conjunction with ephemeral key pairs (see  
3980 [\[SP800-56A\]](#)). Each entity uses its private key-agreement key(s), the other entity's public key-  
3981 agreement key(s) and possibly its own public key-agreement key(s) to determine the shared  
3982 secret. The shared secret is subsequently used to derive shared keying material. Note that in  
3983 some key-agreement schemes, one or more of the entities may not have a static key-agreement  
3984 pair (see [\[SP800-56A\]](#) and [\[SP800-56B\]](#)).

#### 3985 **B.3.10.1 Private Static Key-Agreement Keys**

3986 If the private static key-agreement key cannot be replaced in a timely manner, or if it needs to  
3987 be retained in order to recover encrypted stored data, then the private key **should** be backed up  
3988 in order to continue operations. The private key may be archived.

#### 3989 **B.3.10.2 Public Static Key Agreement Keys**

3990 If an entity determines that the public static key-agreement key is lost or corrupted, the entity  
3991 may recover in one of the following ways:

- 3992 1. If the public key has been certified and is stored elsewhere within the infrastructure,  
3993 then the certificate can be requested.
- 3994 2. If some other entity knows the public key (e.g., the other entity is the owner of the key  
3995 pair), the key can be requested from this other entity.
- 3996 3. If the private key is known, then the public key can be recomputed.
- 3997 4. If the entity is the owner of the key pair, a new key pair can be generated and  
3998 distributed.

3999 If none of these alternatives are possible, then the public static key-agreement key **should** be  
4000 backed up. The public key may be archived.

### 4001 **B.3.11 Ephemeral Key Pairs**

4002 Ephemeral key-agreement keys are generated and distributed during a single key-agreement  
4003 process (e.g., at the beginning of a communication session) and are not reused. These key pairs  
4004 are used to establish a shared secret (often in combination with static key pairs); the shared  
4005 secret is subsequently used to derive shared keying material. Not all key-agreement schemes  
4006 use ephemeral key pairs, and when used, not all entities have an ephemeral key pair (see  
4007 [\[SP800-56A\]](#)).

#### 4008 **B.3.11.1 Private Ephemeral Keys**

4009 Private ephemeral keys **shall not**<sup>52</sup> be backed up or archived. If the private ephemeral key is  
4010 lost or corrupted, a new key pair **shall** be generated, and the new public ephemeral key **shall** be  
4011 provided to the other participating entity in the key-agreement process.

#### 4012 **B.3.11.2 Public Ephemeral Keys**

4013 Public ephemeral keys may be backed up or archived. This may allow the reconstruction of the  
4014 established keying material, as long as the private ephemeral keys are not required in the key-  
4015 agreement computation.

### 4016 **B.3.12 Symmetric Authorization Keys**

4017 Symmetric authorization keys are used to provide privileges to an entity (e.g., access to certain  
4018 information or authorization to perform certain functions). The loss of these keys will deny the  
4019 privileges (e.g., prohibit access and disallow the performance of these functions). If the  
4020 authorization key is lost or corrupted and can be replaced in a timely fashion, then the  
4021 authorization key need not be backed up. A symmetric authorization key **shall not** be archived.

### 4022 **B.3.13 Authorization Key Pairs**

4023 Authorization key pairs are used to determine the privileges that an entity may assume. The  
4024 private key is used to establish the "right" to the privilege; the public key is used to determine  
4025 that the entity actually has the right to the privilege.

---

<sup>52</sup> SP 800-56A states that the private ephemeral keys **shall** be destroyed immediately after use. This implies that the private ephemeral keys **shall not** be backed up or archived.

4026 **B.3.13.1 Private Authorization Keys**

4027 The loss of the private authorization key will deny privileges (e.g., prohibit access and disallow  
4028 the performance of certain functions requiring authorization). If the private key is lost or  
4029 corrupted and can be replaced in a timely fashion, then the private key need not be backed up.  
4030 Otherwise, the private key **should** be backed up. The private key **shall not** be archived.

4031 **B.3.13.2 Public Authorization Keys**

4032 If the authorization key pair can be replaced in a timely fashion (i.e., by a regeneration of the  
4033 key pair and secure distribution of the private key to the entity seeking authorization), then the  
4034 public authorization key need not be backed up. Otherwise, the public key **should** be backed  
4035 up. There is no restriction about archiving the public key.

4036 **B.3.14 Other Cryptographically Related Material**

4037 Like keys, other cryptographically related material may need to be backed up or archived,  
4038 depending on its use.

4039 **B.3.14.1 Domain Parameters**

4040 Domain parameters are used in conjunction with some public key algorithms to generate key  
4041 pairs. They are also used with key pairs to create and verify digital signatures or to establish  
4042 keying material. The same set of domain parameters is often, but not always, used by a large  
4043 number of entities.

4044 When an entity (entity A) generates new domain parameters, these domain parameters are used  
4045 in subsequent digital signature generation or key-establishment processes. The domain  
4046 parameters need to be provided to other entities that need to verify the digital signatures or  
4047 with whom keys will be established. If the entity (entity A) determines that its copies of the  
4048 domain parameters have been lost or corrupted, and if the new domain parameters cannot be  
4049 securely distributed in a timely fashion, then the domain parameters **should** be backed up or  
4050 archived.

4051 When the same set of domain parameters are used by multiple entities, the domain parameters  
4052 **should** be backed up or archived until no longer required unless the domain parameters can be  
4053 otherwise obtained (e.g., from a trusted source).

4054 **B.3.14.2 Initialization Vectors (IVs)**

4055 IVs are used by several modes of operation during the encryption or authentication of  
4056 information using block cipher algorithms. IVs are often stored with the data that they protect.  
4057 If not stored with the data, IVs **should** be backed up or archived as long as the information  
4058 protected using those IVs needs to be processed (e.g., decrypted or authenticated).

4059 **B.3.14.3 Shared Secrets**

4060 Shared secrets are generated by each entity participating in a key-agreement process. The  
4061 shared secret is then used to derive the shared keying material to be used in subsequent  
4062 cryptographic operations. Shared secrets may be generated during interactive communications  
4063 (e.g., where both entities are online) or during non-interactive communications (e.g., in store  
4064 and forward applications).

4065 A shared secret **shall not** be backed up or archived.

4066 **B.3.14.4 RBG Seeds**

4067 RBG seeds are used in the generation of deterministic random bits that need to remain secret.  
4068 These seeds **shall not** be shared with other entities. RBG seeds **shall not** be backed up or  
4069 archived.

4070 **B.3.14.5 Other Public and Secret Information**

4071 Public and secret information is often used during key establishment. The information may  
4072 need to be available to determine the keys that are needed to process cryptographically  
4073 protected information (e.g., to decrypt or authenticate); therefore, the information **should** be  
4074 backed up or archived until no longer needed to process the protected information.

4075 **B.3.14.6 Intermediate Results**

4076 The intermediate results of a cryptographic operation **shall not** be backed up or archived.

4077 **B.3.14.7 Key Control Information**

4078 Key control information is used, for example, to determine the keys and other information to  
4079 be used to process cryptographically protected information (e.g., decrypt or authenticate), to  
4080 identify the purpose of a key, or to identify the entities that share the key (see [Section 6.2.3](#)).  
4081 This information is contained in the key's metadata (see [Section 6.2.3.1](#)).

4082 Key control information **should** be backed up or archived for as long as the associated key  
4083 needs to be available.

4084 **B.3.14.8 Random Numbers**

4085 Random numbers are generated by random number generators. The backup or archiving of a  
4086 random number depends on how it is used.

4087 **B.3.14.9 Passwords**

4088 A password is used to acquire access to privileges by an entity, to derive keys or to detect the  
4089 re-use of passwords.

4090 If the password is only used to acquire access to privileges, and can be replaced in a timely  
4091 fashion, then the password need not be backed up. In this case, a password **shall not** be  
4092 archived.

4093 If the password is used to derive cryptographic keys or to prevent the re-use of passwords, the  
4094 password **should** be backed up and archived.

4095 **B.3.14.10 Audit Information**

4096 Audit information containing key management events **shall** be backed up and archived.

4097 **B.4 Key Recovery Systems**

4098 Key recovery is a broad term that may be applied to several different key recovery techniques.  
4099 Each technique will result in the recovery of a cryptographic key and other information  
4100 associated with that key (e.g., the key's metadata). The information required to recover that key  
4101 may be different for each application or each key-recovery technique. The term "Key Recovery  
4102 Information" (KRI) is used below to refer to the aggregate of information that is needed to  
4103 recover or verify cryptographically protected information. Information that may be considered

4104 as KRI includes the keying material to be recovered or sufficient information to reconstruct the  
 4105 keying material, other associated cryptographic information, the time when the key was  
 4106 created, the identifier associated with the owner of the key (i.e., the individual, application or  
 4107 organization that created the key or that owns the data protected by that key) and any  
 4108 conditions that must be met by a requestor to be able to recover the keying material.

4109 When an organization determines that key recovery is required for all or part of its keying  
 4110 material, a secure Key Recovery System (KRS) needs to be established in accordance with a  
 4111 well-defined Key Recovery Policy (see [Appendix B.5](#)). The KRS **shall** support the Key  
 4112 Recovery Policy and consists of the techniques and facilities for saving and recovering the  
 4113 keying material, the procedures for administering the system, and the personnel associated with  
 4114 the system.

4115 When key recovery is determined to be necessary, the KRI may be stored either within an  
 4116 organization (in backup or archive storage) or may be stored at a remote site by a trusted entity.  
 4117 There are many acceptable methods for enabling key recovery. A KRS could be established  
 4118 using a safe for keying material storage; a KRS might use a single computer that provides the  
 4119 initial protection of the plaintext information, storage of the associated keying material and  
 4120 recovery of that keying material; a KRS may include a network of computers with a central  
 4121 Key Recovery Center; or a KRS could be designed using other configurations. Since a KRS  
 4122 provides an alternative means for recovering cryptographic keys, a risk assessment **should** be  
 4123 performed to ensure that the KRS adequately protects the organization's information and  
 4124 reliably provides the KRI when required. It is the responsibility of the organization that needs  
 4125 to provide key recovery to ensure that the Key Recovery Policy, the key recovery  
 4126 methodology, and the Key Recovery System adequately protect the KRI.

4127 A KRS used by the Federal government **shall**:

- 4128 1. Generate or provide sufficient KRI to allow recovery or verification of protected  
 4129 information when such information has been stored;
- 4130 2. Ensure the validity of the saved key and the other KRI;
- 4131 3. Ensure that the KRI is stored with persistence and availability that is commensurate  
 4132 with that of the corresponding cryptographically protected data;
- 4133 4. Use cryptographic modules that are compliant with [\[FIPS140\]](#);
- 4134 5. Use **approved** algorithms, when cryptography is used;
- 4135 6. Use algorithms and key lengths that provide security strengths commensurate with the  
 4136 sensitivity of the information associated with the KRI;
- 4137 7. Be designed to enforce the Key Recovery Policy (see [Appendix B.5](#));
- 4138 8. Protect KRI against unauthorized disclosure or destruction; the KRS **shall** verify the  
 4139 source of requests and ensure that only requested and authorized information is  
 4140 provided to the requestor;
- 4141 9. Protect the KRI from modification;
- 4142 10. Have the capability of providing an audit trail; the audit trail **shall not** contain the keys  
 4143 that are recovered or any passwords that may be used by the system; the audit trail  
 4144 **should** include the identification of the event being audited, the time of the event, the

4145 identifier associated with the user causing the event, and the success or failure of the  
4146 event;

4147 11. Limit access to the KRI, the audit trail and authentication data to authorized  
4148 individuals; and

4149 12. Prohibit modification of the audit trail.

## 4150 **B.5 Key Recovery Policy**

4151 For each system, application and cryptographic technique used, consideration **shall** be given as  
4152 to whether or not the keying material may need to be saved for later recovery to allow  
4153 subsequent decryption or checking the information protected by the keying material. An  
4154 organization that determines that key recovery is required for some or all of its keying material  
4155 **should** develop a Key Recovery Policy that addresses the protection and continued  
4156 accessibility of that information<sup>53</sup> (see [\[DOD-KRP\]](#)). The policy **should** answer the following  
4157 questions (at a minimum):

4158 1. What keying material needs to be saved for a given application? For example, keys and  
4159 IVs used for the decryption of stored information may need to be saved. Keys for the  
4160 authentication of stored or transmitted information may also need to be saved.

4161 2. How and where will the keying material be saved? For example, the keying material  
4162 could be stored in a safe by the individual who initiates the protection of the  
4163 information (e.g., the encrypted information), or the keying material could be saved  
4164 automatically when the protected information is transmitted, received or stored. The  
4165 keying material could be saved locally or at some remote site.

4166 3. Who will be responsible for protecting the KRI? For example, each individual,  
4167 organization or sub-organization could be responsible for their own keying material, or  
4168 an external organization could perform this function.

4169 4. Who is authorized to receive the KRI upon request and under what conditions? For  
4170 example, the individual who protected the information (i.e., used and stored the KRI) or  
4171 the organization to which the individual is assigned could recover the keying material.  
4172 Legal requirements may need to be considered. An organization could request the  
4173 information when the individual who stored the KRI is not available.

4174 5. Under what conditions can the policy be modified and by whom?

4175 6. What audit capabilities and procedures will be included in the KRS? The policy **shall**  
4176 identify the events to be audited. Auditable events might include KRI requests and their  
4177 associated responses; who made a request and when; the startup and shutdown of audit  
4178 functions; the operations performed to read, modify or destroy the audit data; requests  
4179 to access user authentication data; and the uses of authentication mechanisms.

4180 7. How will the KRS deal with aged keying material whose security strength is now  
4181 reduced beyond an acceptable level?

4182 8. Who will be notified when keying material is recovered and under what conditions? For  
4183 example, the individual who encrypted data and stored the KRI could be notified when

---

<sup>53</sup> An organization's key recovery policy may be included in its PKI Certificate Policy.

4184 the organization recovers the decryption key because the person is absent, but the  
4185 individual might not be notified when the organization is monitoring the activities of  
4186 that individual.

4187 9. What procedures need to be followed when the KRS or some portion of the data within  
4188 the KRS is compromised?

4189

4190 **APPENDIX C: References**

- 4191 [AC] Applied Cryptography, Schneier, John Wiley & Sons, 1996.
- 4192 [ANSX9.31] Digital Signatures using reversible Public Key Cryptography for the  
4193 Financial Services Industry (rDSA), 1998 (Withdrawn).
- 4194 [ANSX9.44] Public Key Cryptography for the Financial Services Industry: Key  
4195 Agreement Using Factoring-Based Cryptography, August 24, 2007.
- 4196 [ANSX9.62] Public Key Cryptography for the Financial Services Industry: The  
4197 Elliptic Curve Digital Signature Algorithm (ECDSA), January 22, 2009.
- 4198 [DiCrescenzo] How to forget a secret, G. Di Crescenzo, N. Ferguson, R. Impagliazzo,  
4199 and M Jakobsson, STACS '99, Available via  
4200 <http://www.macfergus.com/pub/forget.html>.
- 4201 [DOD-KRP] Key Recovery Policy for the United States Department of Defense,  
4202 Version 3.0, 31 August 2003, DoD KRP, Attn: I5P, 9800 Savage Road,  
4203 STE 6737, Ft Meade, MD, 20755-6737.
- 4204 [FIPS140] Federal Information Processing Standard 140-2, Security Requirements  
4205 for Cryptographic Modules, May 25, 2001.
- 4206 [FIPS180] Federal Information Processing Standard 180-4, Secure Hash Standard  
4207 (SHS), August 2015.
- 4208 [FIPS186] Federal Information Processing Standard 186-4, Digital Signature  
4209 Standard (DSS), (Revision of FIPS 186-2, June 2000), July 2013.
- 4210 [FIPS197] Federal Information Processing Standard 197, Advanced Encryption  
4211 Standard (AES), November 2001.
- 4212 [FIPS198] Federal Information Processing Standard 198-1, Keyed-Hash Message  
4213 Authentication Code (HMAC), July 2008.
- 4214 [FIPS199] Federal Information Processing Standard 199, Standards for Security  
4215 Categorization of Federal Information and Information Systems, v 1.0,  
4216 February 2004.
- 4217 [FIPS202] Federal Information Processing Standard 202, SHA-3 Standard:  
4218 Permutation-Based Hash and Extendable-Output Functions, August  
4219 2015.
- 4220 [HAC] Handbook of Applied Cryptography, Menezes, van Oorschot and  
4221 Vanstone, CRC Press, 1996.
- 4222 [ITLBulletin] Techniques for System and Data Recovery, NIST ITL Computer  
4223 Security Bulletin, April 2002.
- 4224 [OMB11/01] OMB Guidance to Federal Agencies on Data Availability and  
4225 Encryption, Office of Management and Budget, November 26, 2001.
- 4226 [PKCS#1] PKCS #1 v2.1, RSA Cryptography Standard, RSA Laboratories, June  
4227 14, 2002.

4228	[RFC2560]	Request for Comment 2560, X.509 Internet Public Key Infrastructure,
4229		Online Certificate Status Protocol – OCSP, IETF Standards Track, June
4230		1999.
4231	[SP800-14]	Special Publication 800-14, Generally Accepted Principles and Practices
4232		for Securing Information Technology Systems, September 1996.
4233	[SP800-21]	Special Publication 800-21, Guideline for Implementing Cryptography
4234		in the Federal Government, December 2005.
4235	[SP800-32]	Special Publication 800-32, Introduction to Public Key Technology and
4236		the Federal PKI Infrastructure, February 2001.
4237	[SP800-37]	Special Publication 800-37, Guide for the Security Certification and
4238		Accreditation of Federal Information Systems, February 2010.
4239	[SP800-38]	Special Publication 800-38, Recommendation for Block Cipher Modes
4240		of Operation:
4241		SP 800-38A, Methods and Techniques, December 2001.
4242		SP 800-38A (Addendum): Three Variants of Ciphertext Stealing for
4243		CBC Mode, October 2010.
4244		SP 800-38B: The CMAC Authentication Mode, May 2005.
4245		SP 800-38C: The CCM Mode for Authentication and Confidentiality,
4246		May 2004.
4247		SP 800-38D: Galois/Counter Mode (GCM) and GMAC, November
4248		2007.
4249		SP 800-38E: The XTS-AES Mode for Confidentiality on Storage
4250		Devices, January 2010.
4251		SP 800-38F: Recommendation for Block Cipher Modes of Operation:
4252		Methods for Key Wrapping, December 2012.
4253		SP 800-38G: Recommendation for Block Cipher Modes of Operation:
4254		Methods for Format-Preserving Encryption, July 2013 (Draft).
4255	[SP800-38A]	Special Publication 800-38A, Recommendation for Block Cipher Modes
4256		of Operation-Methods and Techniques, December 2001.
4257	[SP800-38B]	Special Publication 800-38B, Recommendation for Block Cipher Modes
4258		of Operation: The CMAC Authentication Mode, May 2005.
4259	[SP800-38F]	Recommendation for Block Cipher Modes of Operation: Methods for
4260		Key Wrapping, December 2012.
4261	[SP800-52]	Special Publication 800-52, Guidelines for the Selection, Configuration,
4262		and Use of Transport Layer Security (TLS) Implementations, April,
4263		2014.
4264		

- 4265 [SP800-56A] Special Publication 800-56A, Recommendation for Pair-Wise Key  
4266 Establishment Schemes Using Discrete Logarithm Cryptography, May  
4267 2013.
- 4268 [SP800-56B] Special Publication 800-56B, Recommendation for Pair-Wise Key  
4269 Establishment Schemes Using Integer Factorization Cryptography,  
4270 September 2014.
- 4271 [SP800-56C] Special Publication 800-56C, Recommendation for Key Derivation  
4272 through Extraction-then-Expansion, November 2011.
- 4273 [SP800-57, Part 2]
- 4274 Special Publication 800-57, Part 2, Recommendation for Key  
4275 Management: Part 2: Best Practices for Key Management Organization,  
4276 August 2005.
- 4277 [SP800-67] Special Publication 800-67, Recommendation for Triple Data  
4278 Encryption Algorithm Block Cipher, January 2012.
- 4279 [SP800-89] Special Publication 800-89, Recommendation for Obtaining Assurances  
4280 for Digital Signature Applications, November 2006.
- 4281 [SP800-90] Special Publication 800-90A, Recommendation for Random Number  
4282 Generation Using Deterministic Random Bit Generators, November  
4283 2014 (Draft).
- 4284 Special Publication 800-90B: Recommendation for the Entropy Sources  
4285 Used for Random Bit Generation, September 2013 (Draft).
- 4286 Special Publication 800-90 C: Recommendation for Random Bit  
4287 Generator (RBG) Constructions, September 2013 (Draft).
- 4288 [SP800-90A] Special Publication 800-90A, Recommendation for Random Number  
4289 Generation Using Deterministic Random Bit Generators, June 2015.
- 4290 [SP800-90B] Special Publication 800-90B, Recommendation for the Entropy Sources  
4291 Used for Random Bit Generation, September 2013 (Draft).
- 4292 [SP800-90C] Special Publication 800-90C, Recommendation for Random Bit  
4293 Generator (RBG) Constructions, September 2013 (Draft).
- 4294 [SP800-107] Special Publication 800-107, Recommendation for Applications Using  
4295 Approved Hash Algorithms, August 2012.
- 4296 [SP800-108] Special Publication 800-108, Recommendation for Key Derivation  
4297 Using Pseudorandom Functions, October 2009.
- 4298 [SP800-131A] Special Publication 800-131A, Recommendation for the Transitioning of  
4299 Cryptographic Algorithms and Key Sizes, July 2015 (Draft).
- 4300 [SP800-130] Special Publication 800-130, A Framework for Designing Cryptographic  
4301 Key Management Systems, August 2013.
- 4302 [SP800-132] Special Publication 800-132, Recommendation for Password-Based Key  
4303 Derivation - Part 1: Storage Applications, December 2010.

- 4304 [SP800-133] Special Publication 800-133, Recommendation for Cryptographic Key  
4305 Generation, December 2012.
- 4306 [SP800-152] Special Publication 800-152, DRAFT A Profile for U. S. Federal  
4307 Cryptographic Key Management Systems (CKMS), December 2014  
4308 (Draft).
- 4309

4310 **APPENDIX D: Revisions**

4311 The original version of this document was published in August 2005. In May 2006, the  
4312 following revisions were incorporated:

- 4313 1. The definition of security strength has been revised to remove “or security level”  
4314 from the first column, since this term is not used in the document.
- 4315 2. In the footnote for 2TDEA in Table 2 of Section 5.6.1, the word “guarantee” has  
4316 been changed to “assessment”.
- 4317 3. In the paragraph under Table 2 in Section 5.6.1: The change originally identified  
4318 for the 2006 revision has been superseded by the 2011 revision discussed below.
- 4319 4. In Table 3 of Section 5.6.1, a list of appropriate hash functions have been inserted  
4320 into the HMAC and Key Derivation Function columns. In addition, a footnote has  
4321 been included for the Key Derivation Function column.
- 4322 5. The original text for the paragraph immediately below Table 3 has been removed.

4323 In March 2007, the following revisions were made to allow the dual use of keys during  
4324 certificate requests:

- 4325 1. In Section 5.2, the following text was added:  
4326 “This Recommendation also permits the use of a private key-transport or key-  
4327 agreement private key to generate a digital signature for the following special  
4328 case:  
4329 When requesting the (initial) certificate for a static key-establishment key,  
4330 the associated private key may be used to sign the certificate request. Also  
4331 refer to Section 8.1.5.1.1.2.”
- 4332 2. In Section 8.1.5.1.1.2, the fourth paragraph was originally as follows:  
4333 “The owner provides POP by performing operations with the private key that  
4334 satisfy the indicated key use. For example, if a key pair is intended to support  
4335 key transport, the owner may decrypt a key provided to the owner by the CA  
4336 that is encrypted using the owner's public key. If the owner can correctly  
4337 decrypt the ciphertext key using the associated private key and then provide  
4338 evidence that the key was correctly decrypted (e.g., by encrypting a random  
4339 challenge from the CA, then the owner has established POP. Where a key pair  
4340 is intended to support key establishment, POP **shall not** be afforded by  
4341 generating and verifying a digital signature with the key pair.”

4342 The paragraph was changed to the following, where the changed text is indicated  
4343 in italics:

- 4344 “The (*reputed*) owner *should* provide POP by performing operations with the  
4345 private key that satisfy the indicated key use. For example, if a key pair is  
4346 intended to support *RSA* key transport, the *CA may provide the owner with a*  
4347 *key* that is encrypted using the owner's public key. If the owner can correctly  
4348 decrypt the ciphertext key using the associated private key and then provide  
4349 evidence that the key was correctly decrypted (e.g., by encrypting a random

4350 challenge from the CA, then the owner has established POP. *However, when a*  
 4351 *key pair is intended to support key establishment, POP may also be afforded*  
 4352 *by using the private key to digitally sign the certificate request (although this*  
 4353 *is not the preferred method). The private key establishment private key (i.e.,*  
 4354 *the private key-agreement or key-transport key) **shall not** be used to perform*  
 4355 *signature operations after certificate issuance.”*

4356 In September 2011, several editorial corrections and clarifications were made, and the  
 4357 following revisions were also made:

- 4358 1. The Authority section has been updated.
- 4359
- 4360 2. Section 1.2: The description of SP800-57, Part 3 has been modified per that  
 4361 document.
- 4362
- 4363 3. Section 2.1: Definitions for key-derivation function, key-derivation key, key  
 4364 length, key size, random bit generator and user were added. Definitions for  
 4365 archive, key management archive, key recovery, label, owner, private key, proof  
 4366 of possession, public key, security life of data, seed, shared secret and **should**  
 4367 have been modified. The definition for cryptomodule was removed.
- 4368
- 4369 4. Section 2.2: The RBG acronym was inserted.
- 4370
- 4371 5. References to FIPS 180-3, FIPS 186-3, SP 800-38, SP 800-56A, SP 800-56B, SP  
 4372 800-56C, SP 800-89, SP 800-90, SP 800-107, SP 800-108, SP 800-131A, SP 800-  
 4373 132 and SP 800-133 have been corrected or inserted.
- 4374
- 4375 6. Section 4.2.4: A footnote was added about the two general types of digital  
 4376 signatures and the focus for this Recommendation.
- 4377
- 4378 7. Sections 4.2.5, 4.2.5.3, 4.2.5.5 and 5.3: Discussions about SP 800-56B have been  
 4379 included.
- 4380
- 4381 8. Section 5.1.1: The definitions of private signature key, public signature-  
 4382 verification key, symmetric authentication key, private authentication key and  
 4383 public authentication key have been corrected to reflect their current use in  
 4384 systems and protocols. This change is reflected throughout the document.
- 4385
- 4386 9. Section 5.1.2, item 3: The description of shared secret has been modified to state  
 4387 that shared secrets are to be protected and handled as if they are cryptographic  
 4388 keys.
- 4389
- 4390 10. Sections 5.1.2, 5.3.7, 6.1.2 (Table 5), 8.1.5.3.4, 8.1.5.3.5, 8.2.2.1 (Table 7) and  
 4391 8.3.1 (Table 9): “Other secret information” has been added to the list of other  
 4392 cryptographic or related information.
- 4393
- 4394 11. Section 5.3.1: An additional risk factor was inserted about personnel turnover.
- 4395

- 4396 12. Section 5.3.4: A statement was inserted to clarify the difference between the  
 4397 cryptoperiod of a public key and the validity period of a certificate.  
 4398
- 4399 13. Section 5.3.6: Statements were inserted that emphasize that longer or shorter  
 4400 cryptoperiods than those suggested may be warranted. Also, further discussion  
 4401 was added about the cryptoperiod of the public ephemeral key-agreement key.  
 4402
- 4403 14. Section 5.4.4: A discussion of an owner’s assurance of private-key possession  
 4404 was added.  
 4405
- 4406 15. Section 5.5: Statements were added about the compromise of a CA’s private  
 4407 signature key, and advice was provided for handling such an event.  
 4408
- 4409 16. Section 5.6.1: Table 3 and the text preceding the table have been revised for  
 4410 clarity. Additional footnotes were inserted related to table entries, and the  
 4411 footnote about the security strength provided by SHA-1 was modified to indicate  
 4412 that its security strength for digital signature applications remains the subject of  
 4413 speculation.  
 4414
- 4415 17. Sections 5.6.2 – 5.6.4: Table 4 and the text preceding it have been modified to be  
 4416 consistent with SP 800-131A. Also, the examples have been modified.  
 4417
- 4418 18. Section 5.6.5: This new section was added to address the implications associated  
 4419 with the reduction of security strength because of improvements in computational  
 4420 capabilities or cryptanalysis.  
 4421
- 4422 19. Sections 7, 7.1, 7.2 and 7.3: The description of the states and their transitions have  
 4423 been reworded to require specific behavior (e.g., using **shall** or **shall not**  
 4424 statements, rather than containing statement of fact (e.g., using “is” or are”).  
 4425
- 4426 20. Section 7.3: A discussion of the transition of a private key-transport key and an  
 4427 ephemeral private key-agreement key were added. The previous discussion on  
 4428 private and public key-agreement keys was changed to discuss static private and  
 4429 public key-agreement keys and ephemeral public key-agreement keys.
- 4430 21. Section 8.1.5.3.4: This section was revised to be more consistent with SP 800-  
 4431 90A.  
 4432
- 4433 22. Sections 8.1.5.3.7 and 8.1.5.3.8: New sections were inserted to discuss the  
 4434 distribution of random numbers and passwords.  
 4435
- 4436 23. Section 8.1.6: Text was inserted to indicate which keys would or would not be  
 4437 registered.  
 4438
- 4439 24. Section 8.2.4: This section was revised to be consistent with SP 800-56A SP 800-  
 4440 56B, SP 800-56C, SP 800-108 and SP 800-132.  
 4441

- 4442 25. Section 8.3.1, Table 9: The table was modified to indicate that it is OK to archive  
 4443 the static key-agreement key.  
 4444
- 4445 26. Changes were made to Sections 8.3.1; 9.3.2; and Appendices B, B.1, B.3, B.3.1.2,  
 4446 B.3.2, B.3.4, B.3.5, and B.3.10.2 to remove the impression that archiving is only  
 4447 performed after the end of the cryptoperiod of a key (e.g., keys could be archived  
 4448 immediately upon activation), and that the keys in an archive are only of historical  
 4449 interest (e.g., they may be needed to decrypt data long after the cryptoperiod of a  
 4450 key).
- 4451 27. Section 8.3.3: The discussion about de-registering compromised and non-  
 4452 compromised keys was modified.  
 4453
- 4454 28. Section 8.3.5: A discussion about how revocation is achieved for a PKI and for  
 4455 symmetric-key systems was added.  
 4456
- 4457 29. Appendix B.14.9 was revised to be consistent with SP 800-132.  
 4458
- 4459 30. The tags for references to FIPS were modified to remove the version number. The  
 4460 version number is provided in Appendix C.  
 4461

4462 In 2015, several editorial corrections and clarifications were made, and the following  
 4463 revisions were also made:

- 4464 1. Changed the reference to SP 800-21 to SP 800-175.  
 4465
- 4466 2. Corrected web site links.  
 4467
- 4468 3. [Section 1.4](#): Now refer to FIPS and NIST Recommendations as "NIST standards."  
 4469 Explain the concept of the cryptographic toolkit (in a footnote).  
 4470
- 4471 4. [Section 2.1](#): Modified the definitions of Algorithm originator-usage period,  
 4472 Archive, authentication, authentication code, certification authority, DRBG,  
 4473 Digital signature, Key derivation, Key-encrypting key, Key Management Policy,  
 4474 Key transport, Key update, Key wrapping, Key-wrapping key, Message  
 authentication code, Non-repudiation, Owner, Recipient-usage period, RBG seed,  
 Secure communication protocol, Security services, Signature generation,  
 Signature verification, Source authentication, and Trust anchor.
- 4475 Added definitions for Data-encryption key, Identity authentication, Integrity  
 4476 authentication, Integrity protection, Key-derivation method, Key length, NIST  
 4477 standards, and Source authentication.
- 4478 Removed the definitions of Key attribute and Work.
- 4479 5. [Section 2.2](#): Referenced the applicable publications.  
 4480
- 4481 6. Many of the mentions of "attributes" have been changed to "metadata" to align  
 with discussions in SP 800-152.

- 4482 7. [Section 3](#) and throughout the document: more clearly discusses authentication as  
4483 either integrity authentication or source authentication. Identity authentication has  
4484 been considered as source authentication.
- 4485 8. [Section 3.3](#): Rewritten to more clearly discuss integrity authentication or source  
4486 authentication.
- 4487 9. [Section 3.4](#): Rewritten to more clearly discuss the how authorization is obtained.
- 4488 10. [Section 3.5](#): Rewritten to provide a more realistic discussion of non-repudiation.  
4489 Most references to non-repudiation in the document have been removed.
- 4490 11. Inserted references to FIPS 202, as well as to FIPS 180.
- 4491 12. [Section 4.1](#): Remove a reference to the Dual\_EC\_DRBG specified in SP 800-  
4492 90A.
- 4493 13. [Section 4.2.2.2](#): Rewritten to address the non-approval of two-key TDEA for  
4494 applying protection after 2015 (as indicated in SP 800-131A).
- 4495 14. [Section 4.2.2.3](#): Inserted rationale for not using the ECB mode.
- 4496 15. [Section 4.2.4](#): Rewritten to provide more information about FIPS 186.
- 4497 16. [Section 4.2.5.1](#): Further discussion of SP 800-56A has been included.
- 4498 17. [Section 4.2.5.3](#): Added references to SP 800-56A and SP 800-56B for discussion  
4499 of the security properties of the key-establishment schemes.
- 4500 18. [Section 4.2.5.4](#): Rewritten to clarify the use of "key wrapping" vs. "key  
4501 encryption" in the document.
- 4502 19. [Section 4.2.7](#): Rewritten to describe SP 800-90A, SP 800-90B and SP 800-90C.
- 4503 20. [Section 5.1.1](#): More details added to the symmetric data-encryption key,  
4504 symmetric key-wrapping key, and public key-transport key.  
4505 Added notes of intent to the private and public authentication keys.
- 4506 21. [Section 5.2](#): The use of "should" in the first line has been changed to "shall" to  
4507 more strongly indicate that keys must not be used for multiple purposes. The use  
4508 of "should" presented a conflict with later discussions in the document.
- 4509 22. [Section 5.3.1](#): Added a reference to quantum computers in the list.
- 4510 23. [Section 5.3.4](#): Rewritten to discuss the originator-usage period and recipient usage  
4511 period of asymmetric key pairs.
- 4512 24. [Section 5.3.6](#): Further clarification of the cryptoperiod added to the Private  
4513 signature key (footnote), Public signature verification key, Private authentication  
4514 key (footnote), Public authentication key (footnote), Symmetric authentication  
4515 key, Symmetric key-agreement key, Symmetric key-wrapping key, Symmetric  
4516 RBG keys, Public key-transport key, and Private static key-agreement key.  
4517 Corrected Symmetric data-encryption key and Symmetric key-wrapping key to  
4518 agree with Table 1.

- 4519 Table 1: Modified the header to refer to the originator-usage period and the  
 4520 recipient-usage period. Added a note to the Symmetric key-agreement key for  
 4521 clarification.
- 4522 25. [Section 5.4.2](#): Additional information inserted about obtaining assurance of  
 4523 domain parameter validity.
- 4524 26. [Section 5.4.3](#): Additional information inserted about obtaining assurance of public  
 4525 key validity.
- 4526 27. [Section 5.4.4](#): The details about obtaining assurance of private key possession  
 4527 have been removed, since this is discussed in SP 800-89. A note was added that  
 4528 this assurance could be obtained by a CA.
- 4529 28. [Section 5.5](#): Unnecessary text has been removed.
- 4530 29. [Section 5.6.1](#): The security-strength discussion has been revised, and a reference  
 4531 to SP 800-158 has been inserted.
- 4532 Deleted a note about the block size that was unnecessary.
- 4533 [Table 2](#) has been revised to provide a visual indication of which key sizes are no  
 4534 longer approved for applying cryptographic protection, which are approved, and  
 4535 which are approved, but not specifically mentioned in the FIPS standards. The  
 4536 note about SHA-1 was modified.
- 4537 [Table 3](#) and the following text have been revised to clearly indicate that SHA-1 is  
 4538 no longer approved for generating digital signatures. The SHA-3 hash functions  
 4539 are now included in the table. A note has been added to the header for HMAC.
- 4540 30. [Section 5.6.2](#): [Table 4](#) has been updated to indicate the currently projected  
 4541 security strength time frames.
- 4542 31. [Section 5.6.3](#): A reference to SP 800-158 has been inserted for discussions about  
 4543 determining the actual security strength of a key, based on how it was generated  
 4544 and subsequently handled.
- 4545 32. [Section 6.1](#): Changes have been made to the integrity and confidentiality  
 4546 protection topics to be consistent with [\[SP 800-152\]](#). For the integrity protection  
 4547 topic, " integrity protection can be provided by cryptographic integrity  
 4548 mechanisms..." has been changed to " integrity protection **shall** be provided by  
 4549 cryptographic integrity mechanisms...".
- 4550 33. [Section 6.2](#): An "in use" state has been introduced, along with an  
 4551 acknowledgement that the key may also be in transit and/or in storage.
- 4552 34. [Section 6.2.1.3](#): additional guidance has been added about the generation of the  
 4553 key components.
- 4554 36. [Section 6.2.2.3](#): Addition text was inserted to address the [\[FIPS 140-2\]](#) security  
 4555 level in accordance with [\[SP 800-152\]](#).
- 4556 37. [Section 6.2.3.1](#): A key's history has been inserted as a possible metadata item. A  
 4557 reference to SP 800-158 has been included to provide guidance on handling  
 4558 metadata.

- 4559 38. [Section 7](#) has been completely rewritten, including adding a suspended state and  
4560 providing clarity on the transitions of the different key types. A suspended state  
4561 has been added to Figure 3 and the discussion.
- 4562 39. [Section 8](#): The suspended state has been added to the discussions and included in  
4563 [Figure 5](#).
- 4564 40. [Section 8.1.5](#): A reference to SP 800-133 has been included.
- 4565 41. [Section 8.1.5.1](#): A sentence has been added to the end of paragraph 2 about  
4566 distributing keying material to an organization's sub-entities.
- 4567 42. [Section 8.1.5.1.1.1](#): The section has been revised to clearly and more correctly  
4568 describe what a trust anchor is (i.e., a CA, not a certificate for that CA).
- 4569 43. [Section 8.1.5.1.2](#): A reference to SP 800-56B has been removed, since it does not  
4570 include schemes that use ephemeral keys.
- 4571 44. [Section 8.1.5.2](#), [8.1.5.2.2](#), and [8.2.3.2](#): References to the use of key update as an  
4572 approved method for key change have been removed or modified.
- 4573 45. [Section 8.1.5.2.2.2](#): References to SP 800-38F, SP 800-56A and SP 800-56B have  
4574 been added. A note has been added to mention authenticated encryption modes.
- 4575 46. [Section 8.1.5.2.3](#): Mentions of key wrapping have been removed, since it is not  
4576 used in key-agreement schemes.
- 4577 47. [Section 8.1.5.3.4](#) has been rewritten.
- 4578 48. [Sections 8.2.1.1](#) and [8.2.1.2](#) : The mention of a "device" has been removed, as the  
4579 appropriate reference is to cryptographic modules.
- 4580 49. [Section 8.2.3.2](#): Key update is now disallowed, as stated in [SP 800-152](#).
- 4581 50. [Section 8.3.1](#): More guidance has been provided on using archives.
- 4582 51. [Section 8.3.4](#): The text was modified to discuss the destruction of a key, rather  
4583 than the destruction of the media containing a destroyed key.
- 4584 52. [Section 8.3.5](#), paragraph 6: "...the corresponding public-key certificate **should** be  
4585 revoked " has been changed to "...the corresponding public-key certificate **shall**  
4586 be revoked as soon as possible," and more guidance has been provided about  
4587 using revoked certificates.
- 4588 53. [Section 10](#): A reference has been included to SP 800-130 and SP 800-152.
- 4589 54. [Section 10.2.7](#): A reference to identity-based privileging has been added.
- 4590 55. [Appendix B.3](#): The first list of decision items has been replaced with a reference  
4591 to Section 8.2.2.2 to avoid duplication.
- 4592 56. [Appendix B.3.3.1](#): The first sentence has been rewritten verify the edentity of the  
4593 entity...", rather than "verify the authenticity...".
- 4594 57. [Appendix B.3.3.2](#): Rewritten.
- 4595 58. [Appendix B.3.4](#) and [B.3.5](#): Text about the security strength has been removed as  
4596 being inappropriate for this section.

4597 59. [Appendix C](#): The references have been updated, including the addition of FIPS  
4598 202, SP 800-38G, SP 800-90, SP 800-130 and SP 800-152.